THE DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

Groundwater Modeling System

GMS *v3.0*

TUTORIALS

GMS 3.0 Tutorials

Copyright © 1999 Brigham Young University – Environmental Modeling Research Laboratory

All Rights Reserved

Unauthorized duplication of the GMS software or user's manual is strictly prohibited.

THE BRIGHAM YOUNG UNIVERSITY ENVIRONMENTAL MODELING RESEARCH LABORATORY MAKES NO WARRANTIES EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED REGARDING THE PROGRAM GMS AND ITS FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR THE VALIDITY OF THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS USER'S MANUAL

The software GMS is a product of the Environmental Modeling Research Laboratory (EMRL) of Brigham Young University.

www.emrl.byu.edu

Last Revision: December 13, 1999

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	I	INTRODUCTION	1-1
	1.1	SUGGESTED ORDER OF COMPLETION	1-1
	1.2	RT3D TUTORIALS	1-1
	1.3	DEMO VS. NORMAL MODE	
2	S	SURFACE MODELING WITH TINS	2-1
	2.1	GETTING STARTED	
	2.2		
	2.3	IMPORTING VERTICES	
	2.4	TRIANGULATING	
	2.5	CONTOURING	
	2.6		
	2.7		
	2.8		
	2.9		
	2.10		
	2.11		
	2.12		
	2.13		
	2.14		
		2.14.1 Deleting the TIN	
		2.14.2 Copying the Vertices	
		2.14.3 Subdividing the TIN	
		2.14.4 Interpolating the Elevations	
		2.14.5 Deleting the Scatter Point Set	
	2.15		
	2.16		
	2.17		
	2.18		
	2.19	9 CONCLUSION	
3	S	STRATIGRAPHY MODELING WITH SOLIDS	
	3.1	GETTING STARTED	
	3.2		
	3.3		
	3.4		
	3.5		
	3.6	DISPLAYING THE HOLE NAMES	
	3.7		
		3.7.1 Setting Up the View	
		3.7.2 Turning on the Drawing Grid	
		3.7.3 Defining the Boundary Arc	
		3.7.4 Creating the Polygon	
	3.	3.7.5 Turning off the Drawing Grid	3-6

	GROUND SURFACE TIN	
	ontacts	
	N	
3.9 CONSTRUCTING THE C	GREEN SEAM TIN	
	electing Contacts	
3.9.2 Creating the TI	N	
3.9.3 Hiding the TIN.		
3.10 CONSTRUCTING TH	E RED SOIL TIN	
3.10.1 Constructing	the TIN	
3.10.2 Hiding the T	IN	
3.11 CONSTRUCTING TH	E BLUE SEAM TINS	
3.11.1 Constructing	the Top TIN	
3.11.2 Constructing	the Bottom TIN	
3.11.3 Hiding the Th	INs	
	E RED SOLID	
<i>3.12.1 Creating the</i>	Solid	
	Solid	
3.13 CONSTRUCTING TH	E BLUE SEAM	
3.14 SUBTRACTING THE	BLUE SEAM	
3.15 CONSTRUCTING TH	E GREEN SOLID	
3.16 CONSTRUCTING TH	E TOP BLUE SOLID	
3.17 VIEWING THE SOLI	DS	
<i>3.18.1 Creating the</i>	Cross Sections	
3.18.2 Hiding the So	olids	
3.18.3 Deleting the	Boreholes	
3.18.4 Deleting the	Polygon	
3.18.5 Shading the G	Cross Sections	
	ES	
3.20 DELETING THE SOL	.ids and TINs	
3.21 CONCLUSION		
4 2D GEOSTATISTICS		4.1
	INTERFACES	
	R POINT SET	
4.4 CHANGING THE DISPL	AY OPTIONS	
	NG GRID	
	POLATION SCHEME	
	ON	
	ID	
	S	
)	
	INTERPOLATION	
	RPOLATION	
	ON WITH GRADIENT PLANES	
	ON WITH QUADRATIC NODAL FUNCTIONS	
4.16 NATURAL NEIGHBO	OR INTERPOLATION	
•	Experimental Variogram	
4.17.2 Creating the	Model Variogram	

	4.17.3 Interpolating to the Grid	
	4.18 SWITCHING DATA SETS	
	4.19 USING THE DATA CALCULATOR	
	4.20 DELETING ALL DATA	
	4.21 CONCLUSION	
5	5 3D GEOSTATISTICS	5 1
3		
	5.1 Getting Started	
	5.2 REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES	
	5.3 IMPORTING A SCATTER POINT SET	
	5.4 DISPLAYING DATA COLORS	
	5.5 Z MAGNIFICATION	
	5.6 CREATING A BOUNDING GRID	
	5.7 SIMPLE IDW INTERPOLATION	
	5.8 DISPLAYING ISO-SURFACES	
	5.9 INTERIOR EDGE REMOVAL	
	5.10 FRINGE SPECIFIED RANGE	
	5.11 USING THE Z SCALE OPTION	
	5.12 IDW INTERPOLATION WITH GRADIENT PLANES	
	5.13 IDW INTERPOLATION WITH QUADRATIC FUNCTIONS	
	5.14 Other Interpolation Schemes	
	5.15 VIEWING THE PLUME WITH A CROSS SECTION	
	5.16 USING THE TRUNCATION OPTION	
	5.17 SETTING UP A MOVING CROSS SECTION FILM LOOP	
	5.17.1 Display Options	
	5.17.2 Setting up the Film Loop	
	5.17.3 Playing Back the Film Loop	
	5.18 SETTING UP A MOVING ISO-SURFACE FILM LOOP	
	5.19 DELETING THE GRID AND SCATTER POINT DATA	
	5.20 Conclusion	
	Concelebration	
6		
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH	6-1
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	6-1
6	 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	6-1
6	 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	6-1 6-1 6-2 6-2
6	 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	6-1 6-1 6-2 6-2 6-2 6-3
6	 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	6-1 6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3
6	 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	6-1 6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3
6	 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	6-1 6-1 6-2 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4
6	 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	6-1 6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4 6-4 6-4
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM . 6.2 GETTING STARTED. 6.3 REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES . 6.4 CREATING THE GRID. 6.5 INITIALIZING THE MODFLOW SIMULATION . 6.6 THE BASIC PACKAGE. 6.6.1 Titles. 6.6.2 Packages . 6.6.3 Units.	6-1 6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4 6-4 6-4 6-4
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	6-1 6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4 6-4 6-4 6-4 6-4 6-5
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	6-1 6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4 6-4 6-4 6-4 6-5 6-5 6-5
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4 6-4 6-5 6-5 6-6
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM 6.2 GETTING STARTED. 6.3 REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES 6.4 CREATING THE GRID. 6.5 INITIALIZING THE MODFLOW SIMULATION 6.6 THE BASIC PACKAGE. 6.6.1 Titles. 6.6.2 Packages 6.6.3 Units. 6.6.4 The IBOUND Array 6.6.5 Starting Heads. 6.6.6 Exiting the Dialog 6.7 ASSIGNING IBOUND VALUES DIRECTLY TO CELLS	6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4 6-4 6-5 6-5 6-6
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM . 6.2 GETTING STARTED. 6.3 REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES . 6.4 CREATING THE GRID. 6.5 INITIALIZING THE MODFLOW SIMULATION . 6.6 THE BASIC PACKAGE. 6.6.1 Titles . 6.6.2 Packages	6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4 6-4 6-5 6-5 6-6 6-6
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM 6.2 GETTING STARTED. 6.3 REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES 6.4 CREATING THE GRID. 6.5 INITIALIZING THE MODFLOW SIMULATION 6.6 THE BASIC PACKAGE. 6.6.1 Titles. 6.6.2 Packages 6.6.3 Units. 6.6.4 The IBOUND Array 6.6.5 Starting Heads. 6.6.6 Exiting the Dialog 6.7 ASSIGNING IBOUND VALUES DIRECTLY TO CELLS 6.7.1 Viewing the Left Column. 6.7.2 Selecting the Cells	6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4 6-4 6-5 6-5 6-6 6-6 6-6
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM 6.2 GETTING STARTED. 6.3 REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES 6.4 CREATING THE GRID. 6.5 INITIALIZING THE MODFLOW SIMULATION 6.6 THE BASIC PACKAGE. 6.6.1 Titles. 6.6.2 Packages 6.6.3 Units. 6.6.4 The IBOUND Array 6.6.5 Starting Heads. 6.6.6 Exiting the Dialog 6.7 ASSIGNING IBOUND VALUES DIRECTLY TO CELLS 6.7.1 Viewing the Left Column 6.7.2 Selecting the Cells. 6.7.3 Changing the IBOUND Value.	6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4 6-4 6-5 6-5 6-6 6-6 6-6
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM 6.2 GETTING STARTED. 6.3 REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES 6.4 CREATING THE GRID 6.5 INITIALIZING THE MODFLOW SIMULATION 6.6 THE BASIC PACKAGE 6.6.1 Titles 6.6.2 Packages 6.6.3 Units 6.6.4 The IBOUND Array 6.6.5 Starting Heads 6.6.6 Exiting the Dialog 6.7 ASSIGNING IBOUND VALUES DIRECTLY TO CELLS 6.7.1 Viewing the Left Column 6.7.2 Selecting the Cells 6.7.3 Changing the IBOUND Value 6.7.4 Checking the Values	6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4 6-4 6-5 6-5 6-6 6-6 6-6 6-6 6-6 6-6 6-7
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4 6-4 6-5 6-5 6-6 6-6 6-6 6-6 6-7 6-7
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM 6.2 GETTING STARTED. 6.3 REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES 6.4 CREATING THE GRID. 6.5 INITIALIZING THE MODFLOW SIMULATION 6.6 THE BASIC PACKAGE. 6.6.1 Titles. 6.6.2 Packages 6.6.3 Units. 6.6.4 The IBOUND Array 6.6.5 Starting Heads. 6.6.6 Exiting the Dialog 6.7 ASSIGNING IBOUND VALUES DIRECTLY TO CELLS 6.7.1 Viewing the Left Column 6.7.2 Selecting the Cells 6.7.3 Changing the IBOUND Value 6.7.4 Checking the Values. 6.8 THE BCF PACKAGE 6.8.1 Layer Types	6-1 6-2 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4 6-4 6-5 6-5 6-6 6-6 6-6 6-6 6-7 6-7 6-7
6	6 MODFLOW - GRID APPROACH. 6.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	6-1 6-2 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-3 6-4 6-4 6-4 6-4 6-5 6-5 6-6 6-6 6-6 6-6 6-7 6-7 6-7 6-7 6-7 6-7

	6.8.4	Middle Layer	6-8
		Bottom Layer	
		RECHARGE PACKAGE	
		ie Drain Package	
	6.10.1	Selecting the Cells	
	6.10.2	Assigning the Drains	
	6.10.3	Assigning the Drain Elevations	
	6.11 TH	1E WELL PACKAGE	
	6.11.1	Top Layer Wells	
	6.11.2	Middle Layer Wells	6-12
	6.11.3	Bottom Layer Well	6-13
	6.12 SA	AVING THE SIMULATION	6-14
	6.13 Ru	JNNING MODFLOW	6-15
	6.14 Vi	EWING THE SOLUTION	6-15
	6.14.1	Changing Layers	6-15
	6.14.2	Color Fill Contours	6-15
	6.14.3	Color Legend	6-16
	6.15 Co	DNCLUSION	6-16
7	MODE	LOW - CONCEPTUAL MODEL APPROACH	71
'			
	7.1 Desc	CRIPTION OF PROBLEM	7-1
		ING STARTED	
		JIRED MODULES/INTERFACES	
		RTING THE BACKGROUND IMAGE	
		Reading the Image	
	7.4.2	Image File vs. TIFF File	
		URE OBJECTS	
		DING THE LOCAL SOURCE/SINK COVERAGE	
	7.6.1	Defining the Units	
	7.6.2	Defining the Boundary	
	7.6.3	Copying the Boundary	
	7.6.4	Defining the Specified Head Arcs	
	7.6.5	Defining the Drain Arcs	
	7.6.6	Building the polygons	
	7.6.7	Creating the Wells	
		NEATING THE RECHARGE ZONES	
	7.7.1	Switching Coverages	
	7.7.2	Creating the Landfill Boundary	
		Building the Polygons	
		Assigning the Recharge Values	
	7.8 DEFI	NING THE HYDRAULIC CONDUCTIVITY <i>Top Layer</i>	
	7.8.2	Bottom Layer	
		ATING THE GRID FRAME	
		REATING THE GRID	
		EFINING THE OKID EFINING THE ACTIVE/INACTIVE ZONES	
		ITIALIZING THE MODFLOW DATA	
		DIVERTING THE MODFLOW DATA	
		TERPOLATING LAYER ELEVATIONS	
	7.14 IN	Importing the Ground Surface Scatter Points	
	7.14.1	Calculating a Starting Head Data Set	
	7.14.2	Interpolating the Heads and Elevations	
	7.14.3	Importing the Layer Elevation Scatter Points	
	/.17.7	importing the Easter Deviation Secure 1 Onus.	

	7.14.5 Interpolating the Layer Elevations	
	7.14.6 Adjusting the Display	
	7.14.7 Viewing the Model Cross Sections	
	7.14.8 Fixing the Elevation Arrays	
	7.15 CHECKING THE SIMULATION.	
	7.16 SAVING THE PROJECT	
	7.17 RUNNING MODFLOW	
	7.18 VIEWING THE HEAD CONTOURS	
	7.19 VIEWING THE WATER TABLE IN SIDE VIEW	
	7.20 VIEWING THE FLOW BUDGET	
	7.21 ADDING ANNOTATION	
	7.22 Conclusion	
	·	
8	8 MODPATH	
	8.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	
	8.2 GETTING STARTED	
	8.3 REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES	
	8.4 IMPORTING THE PROJECT	
	8.5 INITIALIZING THE MODPATH SIMULATION	
	8.6 Assigning the Porosities	
	8.6.1 Assigning the Porosities to the Cells	
	8.7 DEFINING THE STARTING LOCATIONS	
	8.7.1 Selecting the Cell	
	8.7.2 Creating the Starting Locations	
	8.8 SPECIFYING THE TRACKING DIRECTION	
	8.9 SAVING THE SIMULATION	
	8.10 RUNNING MODPATH	
	8.11 VIEWING THE SOLUTION	
	8.11.1 Viewing the Pathlines in Cross Section View	
	8.12 TRACKING PARTICLES FROM THE LANDFILL	
	8.12.1 Changing the Tracking Direction	
	8.12.2 Deleting the Starting Locations	
	8.12.3 Defining the New Starting Locations	
	8.13 SAVING THE SIMULATION	
	8.14 RUNNING MODPATH	
	8.14 KUNNING MODPATH	
	8.15 VIEWING THE SOLUTION	
9	9 MT3DMS – GRID APPROACH	
	9.1 DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	
	9.2 Getting Started	
	9.3 Required Modules/Interfaces	
	9.4 Building the Flow Model	
	9.4.1 Creating the Grid	
	9.4.2 Initializing the MODFLOW Simulation	
	9.4.3 The Basic Package	
	9.4.4 The BCF Package	
	9.4.5 Defining the Wells	
	9.4.6 Saving the Simulation	
	9.4.7 Running MODFLOW	
	9.4.8 Viewing the Flow Solution	
	9.5 Building the Transport Model	
	9.5.1 Initializing the Simulation	
	Interesting the Onteresting the Onteresting	

9.5	1 0	
9.5	5.3 The Advection Package	
9.5	5.4 The Dispersion Package	
9.5	5.5 The Source/Sink Mixing Package	
9.5		
9.5	0	
9.5	0	
9.5		
	5.10 Setting Up a Film Loop	
	Conclusion	
	T3DMS – CONCEPTUAL MODEL APPROACH	
10.1	DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	
10.2	GETTING STARTED	
10.3	REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES	
10.4	IMPORTING THE PROJECT	
10.5	INITIALIZING THE MT3DMS SIMULATION	
10.	.5.1 Defining the Units	
10.	.5.2 Defining the Species	
	.5.3 Defining the Stress Periods	
10.	.5.4 Selecting Output Control	
	.5.5 Selecting the Packages	
10.6	ASSIGNING THE AQUIFER PROPERTIES	
10.	.6.1 Assigning the Parameters to the Polygons	
10.7	Assigning the Recharge Concentration	
10.8	CONVERTING THE CONCEPTUAL MODEL	
10.9	LAYER THICKNESSES	
10.10		
10.11		
10.12		
10.13		
10.14		
10.15		
10.16		
10.17		
10.	.17.1 Turning on the Chemical Reactions Package	
10.	.17.2 Entering the Sorption and Biodegradation Data	
10.18		
10.19		
10.20		
10.21	GENERATING A TIME HISTORY PLOT	
10.	21.1 Creating an Observation Coverage	
10.	21.2 Creating an Observation Point	
10.	21.3 Creating a Time Series Plot	
	21.4 Plotting Multiple Curves	
	21.5 Moving the Observation Point	
	Conclusion	
11 SE	AM3D	
11.1	DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	
11.2	GETTING STARTED	
11.3	REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES	
11.4	IMPORTING THE FLOW MODEL	

11.5	INITIALIZING THE SEAM3D SIMULATION	
11.6	BASIC TRANSPORT PACKAGE	
11.6	5.1 Defining the Units	
11.6	5.2 Setting up the Stress Periods	
11.6	5.3 Package Selection	
11.6	0	
11.6		
11.6		
11.6	· ·	
11.0	ADVECTION PACKAGE	
11.7	DISPERSION PACKAGE	
11.8	SOURCE/SINK MIXING PACKAGE	
11.9	CHEMICAL REACTION PACKAGE	
11.11	NAPL DISSOLUTION PACKAGE	
11.1		
11.1	8 8	
11.1	0	
11.12		
11.1		
11.1	2.2 Electron Acceptor Coefficients	
11.1	2.3 Generation Coefficients	
11.1	2.4 Use Coefficients	
11.1		
11.1		
11.1		
11.13	SAVING AND RUNNING THE SIMULATION	
11.14	READING THE SOLUTION	
11.15	SETTING THE CONTOURING OPTIONS	
11.15	VIEWING THE CONCENTRATION CONTOURS	
11.10	SETTING UP A TIME SERIES PLOT	
11.17		
11.1	•	
	8 I	
11.18	OTHER VIEWING OPTIONS	
11.19	CONCLUSION	
12 DEF	FINING LAYER DATA	
12.1	GETTING STARTED	
12.2	REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES	
12.3	USING THE "TRUE LAYER" MODE	
12.4	INTERPOLATING TO MODFLOW LAYERS	
12.5	SAMPLE PROBLEMS	
12.6	BUILDING THE GRID	
12.7	CASE 1 – COMPLETE LAYERS	
12.7	7.1 Importing the Scatter Point Sets	
12.7		
12.7	1 0	
12.8	CASE 2 – EMBEDDED SEAM	
12.8		
12.8	1 0	
12.8	1 8	
12.0		
12.9		
12.9		
12.9	0.2 Interpolating the Values	12-9

	9.3 Correcting the Layer Values	
12.10	CASE 4 – BEDROCK TRUNCATION	
12.1	10.1 Importing the Scatter Points	
12.1	10.2 Interpolating the Values	
12.1	10.3 Viewing the Results	
12.1	10.4 Correcting the Layer Values	
12.1	10.5 Viewing the Corrected Layers	
12.11	Conclusion	
13 REC	GIONAL TO LOCAL MODEL CONVERSION	
	RIPTION OF PROBLEM	
13.1	GETTING STARTED	
13.1	REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES	
13.2	READING IN THE REGIONAL MODEL	
13.5	CONVERTING THE LAYER DATA TO A SCATTER POINT SET	
13.4	APPROACHES TO BUILDING THE LOCAL MODEL	
	BUILDING THE LOCAL CONCEPTUAL MODEL	
13.6		
13.6	8 8	
13.6		
13.6	8	
13.6	0 - 1 - j	
13.7	CREATING THE LOCAL MODFLOW MODEL	
13.7	8 -	
13.7	0	
13.7	11 0	
13.8	INTERPOLATING THE LAYER DATA	
13.9	SAVING AND RUNNING THE LOCAL MODEL	
13.10	VIEWING THE RESULTS	
13.11	CONCLUSION	
14 MO	DEL CALIBRATION	
14 MO 14.1		14-1
	DEL CALIBRATION Description of Problem	14-1
14.1 14.2	DEL CALIBRATION Description of Problem Getting Started	14-1
14.1	DEL CALIBRATION Description of Problem Getting Started Required Modules/Interfaces	14-1 14-1 14-3 14-3
14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4	DDEL CALIBRATION Description of Problem Getting Started Required Modules/Interfaces Reading in the Model	14-1 14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4
14.1 14.2 14.3	DEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM GETTING STARTED REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES READING IN THE MODEL OBSERVATION DATA	14-1 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4
14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5	DEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM GETTING STARTED REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES READING IN THE MODEL OBSERVATION DATA ENTERING OBSERVATION POINTS	14-1 14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4 14-4
14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 14.6 <i>14.6</i>	DEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM GETTING STARTED REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES READING IN THE MODEL OBSERVATION DATA ENTERING OBSERVATION POINTS 6.1 Creating an Observation Coverage	14-1 14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4
14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 14.6 <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i>	DEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM GETTING STARTED GEQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES READING IN THE MODEL OBSERVATION DATA ENTERING OBSERVATION POINTS 6.1 Creating an Observation Coverage 6.2 Creating an Observation Point	14-1 14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4
14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 14.6 <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i>	DEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM GETTING STARTED GEQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES READING IN THE MODEL OBSERVATION DATA ENTERING OBSERVATION POINTS 6.1 Creating an Observation Coverage 6.2 Creating an Observation Point 6.3 Calibration Target	14-1 14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4
14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 14.6 14.6 14.6 14.6 14.6	DEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM GETTING STARTED REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES READING IN THE MODEL OBSERVATION DATA ENTERING OBSERVATION POINTS 6.1 Creating an Observation Coverage 6.2 Creating an Observation Point 6.3 Calibration Target 6.4 Point Statistics	14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-5 14-6 14-7
14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 14.6 <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.7</i>	DDEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM GETTING STARTED REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES READING IN THE MODEL OBSERVATION DATA ENTERING OBSERVATION POINTS 6.1 Creating an Observation Coverage 6.2 Creating an Observation Point 6.3 Calibration Target 5.4 Point Statistics READING IN A SET OF OBSERVATION POINTS	14-1
14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 14.6 <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.7</i> <i>14.7</i>	DDEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-5 14-6 14-7 14-7 14-7
14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 14.6 <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.7</i> <i>14.7</i> <i>14.7</i>	DDEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	14-1
14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 14.6 <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.6</i> <i>14.7</i> <i>14.7</i> <i>14.7</i> <i>14.7</i> 14.8	DEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM GETTING STARTED REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES READING IN THE MODEL OBSERVATION DATA ENTERING OBSERVATION POINTS 6.1 Creating an Observation Coverage 6.2 Creating an Observation Point 6.3 Calibration Target 6.4 Point Statistics READING IN A SET OF OBSERVATION POINTS. 7.1 Deleting the Current Coverage 7.2 Reading in the Points. ENTERING THE OBSERVED STREAM FLUX	14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-5 14-6 14-7 14-7 14-8 14-8
$\begin{array}{c} 14.1 \\ 14.2 \\ 14.3 \\ 14.4 \\ 14.5 \\ 14.6 \\ 14.6 \\ 14.6 \\ 14.6 \\ 14.6 \\ 14.7 \\ 14.7 \\ 14.7 \\ 14.7 \\ 14.8 \\ 14.9 \end{array}$	DEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM GETTING STARTED REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES READING IN THE MODEL OBSERVATION DATA ENTERING OBSERVATION POINTS 6.1 Creating an Observation Coverage 6.2 Creating an Observation Point 6.3 Calibration Target 6.4 Point Statistics READING IN A SET OF OBSERVATION POINTS. 7.1 Deleting the Current Coverage 7.2 Reading in the Points. ENTERING THE OBSERVED STREAM FLUX GENERATING ERROR PLOTS	14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-5 14-6 14-7 14-7 14-8 14-9
$\begin{array}{c} 14.1\\ 14.2\\ 14.3\\ 14.4\\ 14.5\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.8\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\end{array}$	DEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM GETTING STARTED REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES READING IN THE MODEL OBSERVATION DATA ENTERING OBSERVATION POINTS 6.1 Creating an Observation Coverage 6.2 Creating an Observation Point 6.3 Calibration Target 6.4 Point Statistics READING IN A SET OF OBSERVATION POINTS. 7.1 Deleting the Current Coverage 7.2 Reading in the Points. ENTERING THE OBSERVED STREAM FLUX GENERATING ERROR PLOTS 9.1 Computed vs. Observed Plot.	14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-5 14-6 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-8 14-9 14-10
$\begin{array}{c} 14.1\\ 14.2\\ 14.3\\ 14.4\\ 14.5\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.8\\ 14.9\\$	DEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM GETTING STARTED REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES READING IN THE MODEL OBSERVATION DATA ENTERING OBSERVATION POINTS 6.1 Creating an Observation Coverage 6.2 Creating an Observation Point 6.3 Calibration Target 6.4 Point Statistics READING IN A SET OF OBSERVATION POINTS 7.1 Deleting the Current Coverage 7.2 Reading in the Points ENTERING THE OBSERVED STREAM FLUX GENERATING ERROR PLOTS 9.1 Computed vs. Observed Plot 9.2 Error Summary	14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-5 14-6 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-8 14-9 14-10 14-10
$\begin{array}{c} 14.1\\ 14.2\\ 14.3\\ 14.4\\ 14.5\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.8\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.10\\ \end{array}$	DEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-5 14-6 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-8 14-9 14-10 14-10 14-10
$\begin{array}{c} 14.1\\ 14.2\\ 14.3\\ 14.4\\ 14.5\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.8\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.10\\ 14.11\\ \end{array}$	DEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM GETTING STARTED REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES READING IN THE MODEL OBSERVATION DATA ENTERING OBSERVATION POINTS 6.1 Creating an Observation Coverage 6.2 Creating an Observation Point 6.3 Calibration Target 6.4 Point Statistics READING IN A SET OF OBSERVATION POINTS 7.1 Deleting the Current Coverage 7.2 Reading in the Points ENTERING THE OBSERVED STREAM FLUX GENERATING ERROR PLOTS 9.1 Computed vs. Observed Plot 9.2 Error Summary EDITING THE HYDRAULIC CONDUCTIVITY CONVERTING THE MODEL	14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-5 14-6 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-8 14-9 14-10 14-10 14-11
$\begin{array}{c} 14.1\\ 14.2\\ 14.3\\ 14.4\\ 14.5\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.8\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.10\\ 14.11\\ 14.12\\ \end{array}$	DEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	14-1
$\begin{array}{c} 14.1\\ 14.2\\ 14.3\\ 14.4\\ 14.5\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.6\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.7\\ 14.8\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.9\\ 14.10\\ 14.11\\ \end{array}$	DDEL CALIBRATION DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM GETTING STARTED REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES READING IN THE MODEL OBSERVATION DATA ENTERING OBSERVATION POINTS 6.1 Creating an Observation Coverage 6.2 Creating an Observation Point 6.3 Calibration Target 6.4 Point Statistics READING IN A SET OF OBSERVATION POINTS 7.1 Deleting the Current Coverage 7.2 Reading in the Points ENTERING THE OBSERVED STREAM FLUX GENERATING ERROR PLOTS 9.1 Computed vs. Observed Plot 9.2 Error Summary EDITING THE HYDRAULIC CONDUCTIVITY CONVERTING THE MODEL COMPUTING A SOLUTION 12.1 Saving the Simulation	14-1 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-3 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-4 14-5 14-6 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-7 14-8 14-9 14-10 14-10 14-11 14-12 14-12

14.13	READING IN THE SOLUTION	
14.14	ERROR VS. SIMULATION PLOT	
14.15	CONTINUING THE TRIAL AND ERROR CALIBRATION	
14.1	15.1 Changing Values vs. Changing Zones	
14.1	15.2 Viewing the Answer	
14.16	CONCLUSION	
15 FEN	MWATER – FLOW MODEL	
15.1	DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	
15.1	GETTING STARTED	
15.2	REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES	
15.3	BUILDING THE CONCEPTUAL MODEL	
15.4		
15.4		
15.4	· ·	
15.4		
15.4	· ·	
15.4		
15.4		
15.4	· · ·	
15.4		
15.4		
15.5		
15.5	• •	
15.5	0	
15.5	•	
15.5		
15.5		
15.6	HIDING OBJECTS	
15.0	CONVERTING THE CONCEPTUAL MODEL	
15.7	SELECTING THE ANALYSIS OPTIONS	
15.8		
15.8	č i	
15.8	õ	
15.8	· · ·	
15.0	Defining Initial Conditions	
15.9		
15.9		
15.10	DEFINING THE MATERIAL PROPERTIES	
15.10	SAVING AND RUNNING THE MODEL.	
15.12	VIEWING THE SOLUTION	
15.12		
15.1		
15.1		
	Conclusion	
	EP2D - CONFINED	
16.1	DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	
16.2	GETTING STARTED	
16.3	REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES	
16.4	CREATING THE MESH	
16.4		
16.4	4.2 Creating the Corner Nodes	

16.4.	4.3 Interpolating Intermediate Nodes	
16.4.	4.4 Creating an Extra Node	
16.4.	4.5 Creating the Elements	
16.4.	4.6 Deleting the Sheet Pile Element	
16.4.	P.7 Refining the Mesh	
16.5	RENUMBERING THE MESH	
16.6	INITIALIZING THE SEEP2D SOLUTION	
16.7	SETTING THE ANALYSIS OPTIONS	
16.8	ASSIGNING MATERIAL PROPERTIES	
16.9	Assigning Boundary Conditions	
16.9.	0.1 Constant Head Boundaries	
16.10	SAVING THE SIMULATION	
16.11	RUNNING SEEP2D	
16.12	VIEWING THE SOLUTION	
16.13	CONCLUSION	
17 SEE	EP2D - UNCONFINED	17 1
I/ SEE		
17.1	DESCRIPTION OF PROBLEM	
17.2	GETTING STARTED	
17.3	REQUIRED MODULES/INTERFACES	
17.4	CREATING THE MESH	
17.4.	- J 8 J	
17.4.	2.2 Creating a Coverage	
17.4.	0	
17.4.		
17.4.	8	
17.4.		
17.4.		
17.4.	0	
17.5	RENUMBERING THE MESH	
17.6	INITIALIZING THE SEEP2D SOLUTION	
17.7	SETTING THE ANALYSIS OPTIONS	
17.8	ASSIGNING MATERIAL PROPERTIES	
17.9	Assigning Boundary Conditions	
17.9.	1 5	
17.9.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
17.10	SAVING THE SIMULATION	
17.11	RUNNING SEEP2D	
17.12	VIEWING THE SOLUTION	
17.13	MODELING FLOW IN THE UNSATURATED ZONE	
17.1.	0 0	
17.1.		
17.1.		
17.1.	3.4 Editing the Material Properties	
17.14	SAVING THE SIMULATION	
17.15	RUNNING SEEP2D	
17.16	VIEWING THE SOLUTION	
17.17	CONCLUSION	

CHAPTER

Introduction

This document contains tutorials for the Department of Defense Groundwater Modeling System (GMS). Each tutorial provides training on a specific component of GMS. Since the GMS interface contains a large number of options and commands, you are strongly encouraged to complete the tutorials before attempting to use GMS on a routine basis.

In addition to this document, the GMS *Reference Manual* also describes the GMS interface. Typically, the most effective approach to learning GMS is to complete the tutorials before reading the reference manual.

1.1 Suggested Order Of Completion

In most cases, the tutorials can be completed in any desired order. However, some of the tutorials are pre-requisites for other tutorials. For example, since TINs are used in the construction of solid models, the *Surface Modeling With TINs* tutorial (Chapter 2) should be completed before the *Stratigraphy Modeling With Solids* tutorial (Chapter 3).

1.2 RT3D Tutorials

This document contains all of the tutorials for GMS except for the RT3D tutorials. Due to the large number of RT3D tutorials (one for each reaction package), they are contained in a separate document.

1.3 Demo vs. Normal Mode

The interface for GMS is divided into ten modules. Some of the modules contain interfaces to models such as MODFLOW. Such interfaces are typically contained within a single menu. Since some users may not require all of the modules or model interfaces provided in GMS, modules and model interfaces can be licensed individually. Modules and interfaces that have been licensed are enabled using the *Register* command in the *File* menu. The icons for the unlicensed modules or the menus for model interfaces are dimmed and cannot be accessed.

GMS provides two modes of operation: demo and normal. In normal mode, the modules and interfaces you have licensed are undimmed and fully functional and the items you have not licensed are dimmed and inaccessible. In demo mode, all modules and interfaces are undimmed and functional regardless of which items have been licensed. However, all of the print and save commands are disabled.

While some of the tutorials may be completed in either normal or demo mode, many of them can only be completed in normal mode. The required mode is discussed at the beginning of each tutorial. If the tutorial must be completed in normal mode, the modules and interfaces needed for the tutorial are listed. If some of the required items have not been licensed, you will need to obtain an updated password or hardware lock before you complete the tutorial.

CHAPTER

Surface Modeling With TINs

The *TIN* module in GMS is used for general-purpose surface modeling. TINs are formed by connecting a set of xyz points (scattered or gridded) with edges to form a network of triangles. The surface is assumed to vary linearly across each triangle. TINs can be used to represent the surface of a geologic unit or the surface defined by a mathematical function. TINs can be displayed in oblique view with hidden surfaces removed. Elevations or other values associated with TINs can be displayed with color fringes or contours. TINs are used in the construction of solid models and 3D finite element meshes.

This tutorial should be completed before beginning the *Stratigraphy Modeling with Solids* tutorial. The emphasis in this tutorial is on the basic tools for editing TINs. A description of how TINs are used in the construction of solids is provided in the following tutorial.

2.1 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

2.2 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial can be completed in either demo mode or normal model. If you are already in demo mode, you may continue with the tutorial. If you are in normal mode, you will need to ensure that the necessary components have

been licensed. This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The *TIN* module \bigotimes
- The 2D Scatter Point module

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If each of these items is enabled, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to switch to demo mode before continuing. To switch to demo mode:

- 1. Select the Demo Mode command from the File menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompts.

2.3 Importing Vertices

To begin reviewing the tools available for TIN modeling, we will first import a set of vertices from a text file. These vertices are simply a set of xyz points entered into a TIN file. The TIN file format is described in the GMS *File Format* document.

To import the vertices:

- 1. If necessary, switch to the *TIN* module \bigotimes .
- 2. Select the *Open* command from the *File* menu.
- 3. At the bottom of the Open dialog, select the *.tin filter.
- 4. In the *Read File* dialog, locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial**tins*.
- 5. Select the file entitled *verts.tin*.
- 6. Select the *Open* button.

A set of points should appear on the screen.

2.4 Triangulating

To construct a TIN, we must triangulate the set of vertices we have imported. To triangulate the points:

Select the Triangulate command from the Build TIN menu.

The vertices should now be connected with edges forming a network of triangles. The triangulation is performed automatically using the Delauney criterion. The Delauney criterion ensures that the triangles are as "equiangular" as possible. In other words, wherever possible, long thin triangles are avoided. A more complete description of the triangulation algorithm can be found in *Chapter 4* of the GMS *Reference Manual*.

2.5 Contouring

Now that the TIN is constructed, we can use it to generate a contour plot of the TIN elevations.

- 1. Select the *Display Options* macro
- 2. Turn on the *Contours* and *TIN Boundary* options and turn off the *Triangles* and *Vertices* options.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

The contours are generated by assuming that the TIN defines a surface that varies linearly across the face of each triangle.

2.6 Shading

Another way to visualize a TIN is to shade the TIN.

- 1. Select the *Display Options* macro
- 2. Turn off the *Contours* and *TIN Boundary* options and turn on the *Triangles* option.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Oblique View* macro
- 5. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}$

2.7 Editing TINs

As TINs are used in the construction of solids and meshes, it is usually necessary to edit a TIN once it has been created. In many cases, TINs are constructed from a sparse set of points and it is necessary to "fill in the gaps" between the vertices and "sculpt" the TIN using the editing tools to ensure that the TIN is a reasonable representation of the surface being modeled.

A variety of tools are provided in GMS for editing TINs. Before reviewing these tools, we will reset some of the display options.

- 1. Select the *Display Options* macro
- 2. Turn on the Vertices and Contours options.
- 3. Select the *Options* button to the right of the *Contours* option.
- 4. In the section titled *Contour Interval*, select the *Specified Interval* option and change the interval to 20.0.
- 5. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Contour Options* dialog.
- 6. Select the *Close* button to exit the *TIN Display Options* dialog.

2.8 Dragging Vertices

One of the simplest ways to edit a TIN is to drag the vertices with the cursor. This can be accomplished with the *Select Vertices* tool.

- 1. Choose the *Select Vertices* tool **•** from the *Tool Palette*.
- 2. Select the *Plan View* macro
- 3. Choose one of the vertices in the interior of the TIN and drag it to a new location.

Notice that as you move the vertex, the contours of the TIN are instantaneously updated to give you visual feedback on the changes that you are making. You may have also noticed that you are not allowed to drag an interior vertex beyond the boundaries of the adjacent triangles. This prevents the triangles from becoming inverted.

2.9 Dragging in Oblique View

When dragging in plan view, the vertex is constrained to move in the xy plane. To change the z coordinate, we must drag the vertices in oblique view (or front or side view).

- 1. Select the *Oblique View* macro
- 2. Select one of the vertices and drag the vertex up and down.

Notice that as you drag the vertex in oblique view, you are constrained to move the vertex along the z axis.

2.10 Using the Edit Window

In many cases, dragging vertices with the mouse is not adequately precise. It is often necessary to change the vertex coordinates to a specific value. This type of editing can be accomplished with the input fields at the top of the GMS window.

Choose one of the vertices in the TIN and select it by clicking on it with the cursor.

Notice that as the vertex is selected, the coordinates of the vertex are displayed in the fields at the top of the window. The edit fields can be used to change the x, y, or z coordinates of the selected vertex.

- 1. Move the cursor to the z coordinate field and add a value of 5.0 to the current z value of the vertex.
- 2. Hit the *Return* or *Tab* key.

Again, as the vertex coordinates change, the triangle edges and contours of the surface are immediately updated.

2.11 Locking Vertices

In many cases, some of the vertices defining a TIN come from actual measured data such as a borehole log and can be considered "hard" data. In other cases, vertices are added manually and represent "soft" data used simply to fill in gaps. When editing a TIN, it is useful to distinguish between these two types of vertices so that a vertex corresponding to an actual measurement is not accidentally edited. This can be accomplished by "locking" and "unlocking" vertices.

- 1. Select several vertices by dragging a box around the vertices or by clicking on individual vertices while holding down the *Shift* key.
- 2. Select the *Lock/Unlock Vertices* command from the *Modify TIN* menu.

Notice that the color of the vertices changes when they are locked. Once a set of vertices is locked, the coordinates of the vertices cannot be changed.

- 1. Click once outside the TIN to unselect the vertices.
- 2. Select one of the vertices that you just locked.
- 3. Attempt to edit the vertex by dragging or by entering new coordinates in the *Edit Window*.

Locked vertices can be unlocked by selecting the vertices and selecting the *Lock/Unlock Vertices* command from the *Modify TIN* menu.

2.12 Adding Vertices

As mentioned above, when working with TINs it is often necessary to edit a TIN by adding supplemental vertices to the TIN to provide more resolution or detail in an area of interest. Vertices can be added to a TIN in GMS simply by pointing and clicking.

- 1. Select the *Plan View* macro
- 2. Select the *Create Vertex* tool.
- 3. Place the cursor in the interior of one of the triangles in the TIN and create a vertex by clicking the mouse button.

A dialog appears prompting for the z value of the new vertex. The default value is computed using a linear interpolation of the surrounding vertices.

Select the *OK* button to accept the default value.

Notice that the vertex was automatically incorporated into the TIN topology. In addition, the vertex is selected and can be edited using the edit fields in the *Edit Window*.

2.13 Deleting Vertices

It is also frequently necessary to delete vertices. To delete the vertex you just created:

- 1. Select the *Delete* command from the *Edit* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* to confirm the deletion.

Notice that all of the triangles connected to the vertex were deleted. By default, this is what happens when a vertex is deleted. The resulting void can be filled with triangles by using the *Create Triangle* tool to manually create triangles. However, another option is available for deletion that causes the region surrounding a deleted vertex to be automatically retriangulated.

- 1. Select the Vertex Options command from the Modify TIN menu.
- 2. Turn on the option entitled *Retriangulate after deleting*.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Choose the *Select Vertices* tool
- 5. Select one the vertices in the interior of the TIN.
- 6. Select the *Delete* command from the *Edit* menu.
- 7. Select *OK* to confirm the deletion.

Notice that the triangles next to the deleted vertex are deleted but the resulting void is retriangulated.

2.14 Smoothing a TIN

As mentioned above, a TIN represents a piecewise linear surface. If the vertices defining the TIN are sparse, the linear surface defined by the triangles may appear excessively irregular. A TIN can be smoothed in GMS by copying the TIN vertices to a scatter point set, subdividing the TIN into a denser set of triangles, and interpolating the elevations to the new vertices in the TIN. The resulting TIN is still piecewise linear but it appears much smoother since the triangles are smaller.

2.14.1 Deleting the TIN

We will now go through an example of TIN smoothing, but first we will read in a different TIN since we have made several changes to this TIN.

- 1. Select the *Delete All* command from the *Edit* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* to confirm the deletion.

- 3. Select the *Open* command from the *File* menu.
- 4. Select No at the prompt about saving the project.
- 5. In the *Open* dialog, select the *.*tin* filter.
- 6. Select the file entitled "sparse.tin".
- 7. Click on the *Open* button.

2.14.2 Copying the Vertices

The first step in smoothing the TIN is to copy the vertices of the TIN to a scatter point set. This will allow us to use the scatter point set later to interpolate the z values of the original vertices to the new vertices created while subdividing the TIN.

- 1. Select the *TIN* -> *Scatter Points* command in the *Build TIN* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button to accept the default name of the new scatter point set.
- 3. Select the *No* button to indicate that you do not want to delete the existing TIN.

2.14.3 Subdividing the TIN

The next step is to increase the resolution of the TIN by uniformly subdividing the TIN.

- 1. Select the *Uniformly Subdivide TIN* command from the *Modify TIN* menu.
- 2. Move the scroll bar to select a subdivision factor of 8.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

2.14.4 Interpolating the Elevations

Notice that the contours of the TIN have not changed. There are more triangles in the TIN but they still define essentially the same surface. To smooth the TIN we must use one of the interpolation schemes and interpolate from the original vertices of the TIN to the new vertices created during the subdivision process.

1. Switch to the 2D Scatter Point module

- 2. Select the *to Active TIN* command from the *Interpolation* menu (we will use the default interpolation method).
- 3. Enter a name of "new_elev" for the new data set.
- 4. Turn on the *Map elevations* option. This ensures that the data set created on the TIN will be used to define the elevations of the TIN vertices.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

The contours on the TIN now appear smoother. To better view the variation in the surface:



2.14.5 Deleting the Scatter Point Set

The TIN smoothing process is now completed. Since we no longer need the scatter point set, we will delete it.

- 1. Select the *Delete All* command from the *Edit* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button to confirm the deletion.

2.15 Reading Another TIN

In GMS, several TINs can be modeled at once. For example, we will now read in another TIN without first deleting the existing TIN.

- 1. Switch to the *TINs* module \overleftrightarrow .
- 2. Select the *Open* command from the *File* menu.
- 3. Select No at the prompt about saving the project.
- 4. In the Open dialog, select the *.tin filter.
- 5. Select the file entitled "surface.tin".
- 6. Click on the *Open* button.

You should now see two TINs displayed at once.

2.16 Changing the Active TIN

Whenever multiple TINs are being modeled, one of the TINs is designated as the active TIN. Only the active TIN can be edited. A TIN can be designated as the active TIN using the combo box at the top of the GMS window.

- 1. Choose the *Select TINs* tool **W**.
- 2. In the combo box titled "TIN", select the "sparse" item.

Notice that triangular shaped icons appear at the center of each TIN. A TIN is selected by selecting the TIN icon. The active TIN has a letter "A" displayed in the center of the icon. A TIN can also be designated as the active TIN by double clicking on the TIN icon. For example:

Double click on the TIN icon entitled "surface".

The letter "A" is now displayed in the icon for the TIN we just read from a file. This TIN can now be edited.

2.17 Hiding and Showing TINs

When multiple TINs are in memory, it is sometimes useful to hide some of the TINs temporarily. This makes the display less cluttered and makes it easier to edit or visualize an individual TIN. For example:

- 1. Select the TIN entitled "sparse" by clicking once on the TIN icon.
- 2. Select the *Hide* macro

2.18 Deleting the TINs

Since we are now finished with the TINs, we will delete them.

- 1. Select the *New* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select the *No* button to confirm the deletion.

2.19 Conclusion

This concludes the *Surface Modeling With TINs* tutorial. Now that you have finished this tutorial and understand the basics of TIN modeling, you are

prepared to proceed to the tutorial entitled *Stratigraphy Modeling with Solids* (*Chapter 3*).

If you were originally running in normal mode and switched to demo mode to complete this tutorial, you can switch back to normal mode as follows:

- 1. Select the *Normal Mode* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button at the prompt.

If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *No* at the prompt.

CHAPTER

Stratigraphy Modeling With Solids

The *Solid* module of GMS is used to construct three-dimensional models of stratigraphy. Once such a model is created, cross sections can be cut anywhere on the model and hidden surface removal and shading can be used to generate highly realistic images of either the cross sections or the solids. Volumes of solids can also be computed.

In this tutorial you will learn how to construct a set of solid models representing soil stratigraphy using borehole data as input. Since TINs are used in the construction of solids, you should first complete the tutorial entitled *Surface Modeling with TINs (Chapter 2)* before beginning this tutorial. It is also helpful if you read the introduction to the chapter describing the *Solid* module in the GMS *Reference Manual*. This will give you a basic understanding of the approach used to construct solid models.

3.1 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

3.2 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial can be completed in either demo mode or normal model. If you are already in demo mode, you may continue with the tutorial. If you are in normal mode, you will need to ensure that the necessary components have

been licensed. This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The TIN module \bigotimes
- The *Borehole* module
- The *Solid* module
- The *Map* module

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If each of these items is enabled, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to switch to demo mode before continuing. To switch to demo mode:

- 1. Select the *Demo Mode* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompts.

3.3 Constructing the Solid Models

Constructing a set of solid models of soil stratigraphy in GMS is a three step process. In the first step, a set of boreholes is input. In the next step, a set of surfaces (TINs) is constructed through contacts on the boreholes which are selected by the user. These surfaces represent the interfaces between adjacent soil layers. In the third step, the surfaces are used to construct solid models of the soil layers.

3.4 Reading Borehole Data

The first step in the construction of the solid models is to import a set of borehole logs. Borehole data can be entered one of two ways. The data can be entered into a text file in the GMS borehole file format described in the GMS *Reference Manual*. Alternately, the boreholes can be entered one at a time using the *Borehole Editor* command in the *Boreholes* menu. In the interest of time, we will use the first approach and import a set of boreholes from a previously prepared borehole file. The borehole data in this file were obtained from an actual site investigation.

To read in the file:

- 1. Switch to the *Borehole* module
- 2. Select the Open command from the File menu.
- 3. Locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial*\solids.
- 4. Select the file entitled *holes.gpr*.
- 5. Click on the *Open* button.

You should now see a 3D view of the borehole logs. Each of the colors represents a different type of soil. The green soil is a clean sand, the red soil is a silty sand, and the blue soil is a silty clayey fine sand. For the remainder of this tutorial, the soils will be referred to by their colors for simplicity.

3.5 Changing the Z Scale

In some cases, it is useful to magnify the display in the z dimension so that the variation in the stratigraphy depicted by the borehole logs is more apparent. To change the z scale:

- 1. Select the Z Magnification command from the View menu.
- 2. Enter a value of 2.0.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

The holes should now appear "stretched" in the vertical direction.

3.6 Displaying the Hole Names

To help distinguish between the holes on the screen throughout the remainder of the tutorial, the names of the holes will be posted on the holes.

- 1. Select the *Display Options* macro
- 2. Turn on the Hole Names option.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

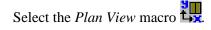
The names of the holes should appear at the tops of the holes. These names were defined in the borehole file.

3.7 Creating an Extrapolation Polygon

The next step in the construction of the stratigraphy model is to create a set of TINs that represent the interfaces between the soil layers depicted in the borehole data. However, before constructing the TINs, we must first define an extrapolation polygon. The extrapolation polygon defines the boundary or the limits of the stratigraphy model. In many cases, the polygon corresponds to a property boundary.

3.7.1 Setting Up the View

The extrapolation polygon will just enclose the boreholes. The polygon will be entered in plan view.



To allow plenty of screen space to enter the polygon we will increase the viewing area (zoom out).

- 1. Select the *Zoom* tool \bigcirc .
- 2. While holding down the *Shift* key, click somewhere in the center of the boreholes.

3.7.2 Turning on the Drawing Grid

We will be entering the extrapolation polygon interactively using the mouse. To help guide the placement of the polygon, we will temporarily turn on a drawing grid.

- 1. Select the Drawing Grid Options command from the Display menu.
- 2. Set the *Spacing* to 50.0.
- 3. Turn on the *Snap to grid* option.
- 4. Turn on the Display grid lines option.
- 5. Set the *Grid line spacing increment* to 1.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.

You should see a grid appear on the screen. Notice that as you move the cursor across the *Graphics Window*, the coordinates that appear in the *Edit Window* at the bottom of the screen move in increments of 50.

3.7.3 Defining the Boundary Arc

We are now ready to enter the extrapolation polygon. The extrapolation polygon is entered using the feature object tools in the Map module. First, we will create a single arc defining a closed loop around the site.

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module +
- 2. Select the *Create Arc* tool
- 3. Create a single arc by clicking on the points shown in Figure 3.1 (clockwise or counter-clockwise it does not matter). To ensure you are placing the points in the proper location, note the cursor coordinates displayed on the left side of the *Edit Window*. Begin with the point (50, 700). To close the polygon, double click on the point you started with.

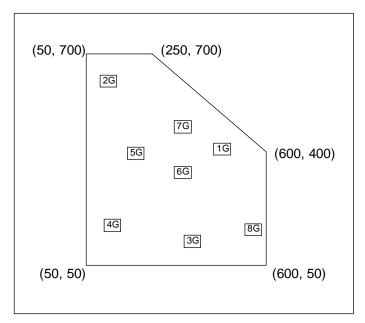


Figure 3.1 The Coordinates of the Points Defining the Extrapolation Polygon.

3.7.4 Creating the Polygon

Now that we have created the arc, we must use the arc to build a polygon.

- 1. Select the *Build Polygons* command from the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt to use all arcs.

The *Build Polygons* command traverses the set of currently defined arcs and makes polygons out of all of the closed loops found. This is trivial in this case since there is only one arc and one closed loop.

3.7.5 Turning off the Drawing Grid

Now that the polygon is entered, you can turn off the drawing grid.

- 1. Select the Drawing Grid Options command from the Display menu.
- 2. Turn off the Snap to grid option.
- 3. Turn off the Display grid lines option.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.
- 5. Select the *Oblique View* macro 4

3.8 Constructing the Ground Surface TIN

You are now ready to construct a TIN using the borehole logs. We will begin by constructing a TIN representing the ground surface. This TIN will pass through the top of each of the boreholes.

3.8.1 Selecting the Contacts

Before constructing the TIN, you must first select the contacts (locations on the boreholes) that will be used to create the TIN.

- 1. Switch to the *Borehole* module
- 2. Choose the *Select Contacts* tool
- 3. While holding the *Shift* key, click on the top of each of the holes.

3.8.2 Creating the TIN

Now that you have selected the points on the boreholes where the TIN is to pass through, you can construct the TIN by triangulating the points.

- 1. Select the *Contacts* -> *TIN* command from the *Boreholes* menu.
- 2. Select the Auto-extrapolate only option.

- 3. Select the OK button.
- 4. Enter "topblue1" for the name of the TIN.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

A blue TIN should appear. Note that the TIN passes through the borehole contacts that were selected and it also extends out to the extrapolation polygon. This TIN could now be edited, if desired, using the TIN editing tools described in the previous tutorial to smooth or reshape the TIN. For the purposes of this tutorial, the TIN is adequate as is and will not be edited.

3.8.3 Hiding the TIN

Before continuing, it is useful to hide the TIN so that it will not be cluttering the display while the other TINs are being constructed. To hide the TIN:

- 1. Switch to the *TIN* module \bigotimes .
- 2. Choose the *Select TINs* tool.
- 3. Select the TIN you just created by clicking on its icon.
- 4. Select the *Hide* macro
- 5. Switch back to the *Borehole* module **3**.

3.9 Constructing the Green Seam TIN

Next, we will construct the TIN representing the top of the green seam that cuts through the side. To select the contacts:

- 1. Choose the *Select Contacts* tool
- 2. Select the blue/green contact on hole 3G.

3.9.1 Automatically Selecting Contacts

We could now select the remaining contacts one at a time with the *Shift* key down as we did last time. However, this time we will use the *Auto Select* command to select the remaining holes. The *Auto Select* command is used to select a set of contacts that match a previously selected contact.

1. Select the Auto Select command from the Boreholes menu.

2. Select the *OK* button.

3.9.2 Creating the TIN

All of the contacts at the top of the green soil should now be selected. To construct the TIN:

- 1. Select the *Contacts -> TIN* command from the *Borehole* menu.
- 2. Select the Auto-extrapolate with trimming to selected boreholes option.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Enter "topgreen" for the name of the TIN.
- 5. Select the OK button.

A green TIN should appear. Note that once again the TIN is automatically extended to the extrapolation polygon and in addition, the TIN is automatically extended to a point halfway between the holes that were selected and the holes that were not selected. Of course, this boundary could be edited, but it provides a reasonable initial estimate of the extent of the surface defined by the selected contacts. For the purposes of this tutorial, we will accept the default surface.

3.9.3 Hiding the TIN

To hide the TIN:

- 1. Switch to the *TIN* module \bigotimes .
- 2. Choose the *Select TINs* tool.
- 3. Select the TIN you just created by clicking on its icon.
- 4. Select the *Hide* macro
- 5. Switch back to the *Borehole* module **3**.

3.10 Constructing the Red Soil TIN

Next, we will construct the TIN representing the top of the red soil unit at the lower part of the stratigraphy.

3.10.1 Constructing the TIN

To construct the TIN:

- 1. Choose the *Select Contacts* tool
- 2. Select the blue/red contact on hole 4G.
- 3. Select the *Auto Select* command from the *Boreholes* menu.
- 4. Turn off the Match material above option.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.
- 6. Select the *Contacts -> TIN* command from the *Boreholes* menu.
- 7. Select the Auto-extrapolate only option.
- 8. Select the *OK* button.
- 9. Enter "topred" for the name of the TIN.
- 10. Select the *OK* button.

3.10.2 Hiding the TIN

To hide the TIN:

- 1. Switch to the *TIN* module \bigotimes .
- 2. Choose the *Select TINs* tool $\mathbf{\widehat{D}}$.
- 3. Select the TIN you just created by clicking on its icon.
- 4. Select the *Hide* macro
- 5. Switch back to the *Borehole* module **3**.

3.11 Constructing the Blue Seam TINs

Most of the boreholes show a thin region of blue soil near the bottom of the holes. We will model this region as a blue seam which cuts diagonally through the site. This seam will lie entirely within the red soil. To model the seam, we will need to construct two TINs: one at the top of the seam and one at the bottom.

3.11.1 Constructing the Top TIN

To construct the TIN at the top of the seam:

- 1. Choose the *Select Contacts* tool
- 2. Select the red/blue contact on hole 8G (see Figure 3.2).
- 3. Select the *Auto Select* command from the *Boreholes* menu.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.
- 5. Select the *Contacts -> TIN* command from the *Boreholes* menu.
- 6. Select the Auto-extrapolate with trimming to selected boreholes option.
- 7. Select the *OK* button.
- 8. Enter "topblue2" for the name of the TIN.
- 9. Select the *OK* button.

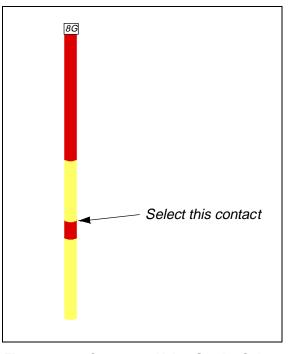


Figure 3.2 Contact on Hole 8G to be Selected.

3.11.2 Constructing the Bottom TIN

To construct the TIN at the bottom of the seam.

1. Since the *Auto Select* command will not work in this case, hold down the *Shift* key and select the following contacts (see Figure 3.3):

the lower blue/red contact on hole 8G.

the bottom of hole 6G,

the blue/red contact on hole 7G,

the lower blue/red contact on hole 5G,

and the bottom of hole 2G.

- 2. Select the *Contacts -> TIN* command from the *Borehole* menu.
- 3. Select the *Auto-extrapolate with trimming to selected boreholes* option.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.
- 5. Enter "botblue2" for the name of the TIN.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.

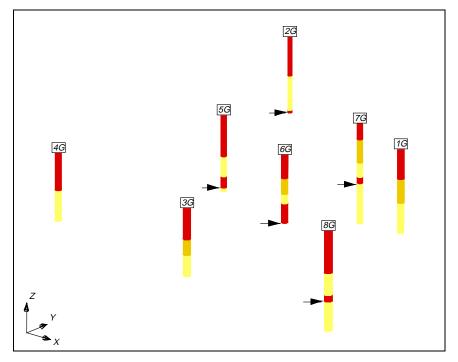


Figure 3.3 Contacts to be Selected.

3.11.3 Hiding the TINs

To hide the TINs:

- 1. Switch to the *TIN* module \bigotimes .
- 2. Choose the *Select TINs* tool
- 3. While holding down the *Shift* key, select the two TINs you just created.
- 4. Select the *Hide* macro

Constructing the Red Solid 3.12

Now that all of the TINs are constructed, we are ready to construct the solid models from the TINs. To begin, we will construct the solid representing the red soil. This solid will be constructed by extruding the boundary of the red TIN down to a horizontal plane below the boreholes.

3.12.1 Creating the Solid

To create the solid:

- 1. Select the TIN entitled "topred".
- 2. Select the *Extrude TIN -> Solid* command from the *Build TIN* menu.
- 3. Enter "red" for the name of the solid.
- 4. Enter -45.0 for the *Elevation*.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

Shading the Solid 3.12.2

A red solid should appear on the screen. The shape of the solid can be better illustrated by generating a shaded image.

Select the *Shade* macro



To revert to wireframe view:

Select the *Refresh* macro 🕄

3.13 Constructing the Blue Seam

Next, we will construct the lower blue seam. This solid can be constructed simply by filling between the two TINs defining the top and the bottom of the seam. When this method is used, it is important that the top TIN is first selected followed by the bottom TIN.

1. Select the TIN entitled "topblue2".

NOTE: In some cases, the TIN icons are grouped together and it is difficult to be sure your are selecting the proper TIN. In such cases, it is often helpful to select the *Select from List* command in the *Edit* menu. This command allows you to select a TIN by choosing the name of the TIN from the list of currently defined TINs.

- 2. While holding the *Shift* key, select the TIN entitled "botblue2".
- 3. Select the *Fill Between TINs -> Solid* command from the *Build TIN* menu.
- 4. Enter "blue2" for the name of the solid.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

3.14 Subtracting the Blue Seam

At this point, the blue seam and the red solid occupy the same space. To create an accurate stratigraphy model, we must make a hole in the red solid at the location of the blue seam. This can be accomplished by "subtracting" the blue seam from the red solid using a set operation.

- 1. Switch to the *Solid* module \square
- 2. Choose the *Select Solids* tool
- 3. Select the solid entitled "red".
- 4. While holding down the *Shift* key, select the solid entitled "blue2".
- 5. Select the Set Operations command from the Solids menu.
- 6. In the section entitled *Operand #1*, turn on the *Delete* option. This will delete the old version of the red solid once the set operation is completed since we won't need it anymore.

- 7. Select the minus operation
- 8. Enter "red" for the name of the new solid resulting from the set operation.
- 9. Select the *OK* button.

The red solid now has a hole in it at the location of the blue seam. To confirm:



To revert to wireframe view:

Select the *Refresh* macro **a**

3.15 Constructing the Green Solid

Next, we will construct the solid representing the green seam. This solid will be created by filling between the green TIN and the red TIN.

- 1. Switch to the *TIN* module \bigotimes .
- 2. Select the *Select TINs* tool II.
- 3. Select the TIN entitled "topgreen".
- 4. While holding the *Shift* key, select the TIN entitled "topred".
- 5. Select the *Fill Between TINs -> Solid* command from the *Build TIN* menu.
- 6. Enter "green" for the name of the solid.
- 7. Select the *OK* button.

3.16 Constructing the Top Blue Solid

Finally, we will construct the solid representing the top blue soil layer. This solid is bounded below by both the green solid and the red solid. However, it can still be constructed using the *Fill Between TINs -> Solid* command. The solid is constructed by filling from the blue TIN down to the red or green TIN, whichever is higher.

- 1. Select the TIN entitled "topblue1".
- 2. While holding the *Shift* key, select the TIN entitled "topgreen".
- 3. While holding the *Shift* key, select the TIN entitled "topred".
- 4. Select the *Fill Between TINs -> Solid* command from the *Build TIN* menu.
- 5. Enter "blue1" for the name of the solid.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.

3.17 Viewing the Solids

At this point, all of the solids are constructed and the stratigraphy model is complete. To view the model in shaded mode:

Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}\Theta$.

3.18 Cross Sections

Another useful way to visualize a stratigraphy model is to construct cross sections through the model.

3.18.1 Creating the Cross Sections

To construct a set of cross sections:

- 1. Switch to the *Solid* module \Box
- 2. Select the *Create Cross Section* tool \square .
- 3. Select the *Plan View* macro
- 4. Cut a cross section through the solids by clicking on one side of the solids, moving the cursor to the other side of the solids, and double-clicking. Cut the solid through the line A-A' as shown in Figure 3.4. Repeat this process to create cross sections at the lines B-B', C-C', D-D', and E-E'.

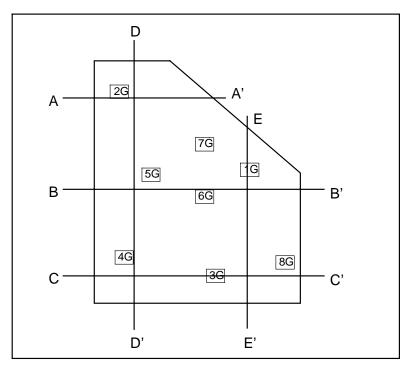


Figure 3.4 Location of Cross Sections.

3.18.2 Hiding the Solids

Before viewing the cross sections we need to select the solids and make them invisible.

- 1. Select the *Select Solids* tool **Select** from the *Tool Palette*.
- 2. Choose the *Select All* command from the *Edit* menu.
- 3. Select the *Hide* macro from the *Tool Palette*.
- 4. Select the *Oblique View* macro from the *Tool Palette*.

3.18.3 Deleting the Boreholes

Since we no longer need the boreholes, we can remove them from the display by simply deleting them.

- 1. Switch to the *Boreholes* module
- 2. Select the *Delete All* command from the *Edit* menu.
- 3. Select *OK* to confirm the deletion.

3.18.4 Deleting the Polygon

We will also delete the polygon.

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module
- 2. Select the *Delete All* command from the *Edit* menu.
- 3. Select *OK* to confirm the deletion.

3.18.5 Shading the Cross Sections

Once again, the cross sections are displayed as a wire frame image by default. We can shade the cross sections the same way we shaded the solids.

Select the *Shade* macro **G** from the *Tool Palette*.

You may wish to use the *Rotate* tool ***** to rotate the cross sections to a better viewing position and shade the solids again.

3.19 Layer Boundaries

Notice that the boundaries of the green seam and the blue seam have an abrupt vertical edge rather than a gradually narrowing pinchout boundary which would seem more natural. A sharp pinchout at the boundary can be achieved by altering the coordinates of the TIN vertices prior to constructing the solids using the TIN editing tools described in the previous tutorial.

3.20 Deleting the Solids and TINs

The solids and TINs can be deleted using the *New* command. The *New* command deletes all data in all modules.

- 1. Select the *New* command in the *File* menu.
- 2. Select the *No* button to confirm.

3.21 Conclusion

This concludes the *Stratigraphy Modeling with Solids* tutorial.

If you were originally running in normal mode and switched to demo mode to complete this tutorial, you can switch back to normal mode as follows:

- 1. Select the Normal Mode command from the File menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button at the prompt.

If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *No* at the prompt.

CHAPTER

2D Geostatistics

Two-dimensional geostatistics (interpolation) can be performed in GMS using the 2D Scatter Point module. The module is used to interpolate from sets of 2D scatter points to any of the other object types (meshes, grids, TINs). Several interpolation schemes are supported, including kriging. Geostatistics are useful for setting up input data for analysis codes or for site characterization.

The tools for manipulating scatter point sets and the interpolation schemes supported in GMS are described in this tutorial. The interpolation schemes presented in this tutorial will be easier to understand if you have read *Chapter* 9 of the *GMS Reference Manual*. This tutorial should be completed before attempting the *Three-Dimensional Geostatistics* tutorial.

4.1 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

4.2 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial can be completed in either demo mode or normal model. If you are already in demo mode, you may continue with the tutorial. If you are in normal mode, you will need to ensure that the necessary components have

been licensed. This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The 2D Scatter Point module
- The 2D Grid module

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If each of these items is enabled, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to switch to demo mode before continuing. To switch to demo mode:

- 1. Select the Demo Mode command from the File menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompts.

4.3 Importing a Scatter Point Set

Interpolation in GMS is performed using scatter points. A set of 2D scatter points is defined by a set of xy coordinates. A group of scatter points is called a scatter point set. Each scatter point set has a list of scalar data sets. Each data set represents a set of values that can be interpolated to a TIN, mesh, or grid.

To begin the tutorial, we will import a scatter point set. The scatter point set has been entered into a previously prepared text file using the *Tabular Scatter Point File* format described in the GMS *File Formats* document. This format is designed for importing scatter point sets only. GMS saves scatter point sets using a different format. The format uses a simple tabular approach that can be easily prepared using a spreadsheet or text editor. The file we will import was generated as an *Excel* spreadsheet and exported from *Excel* as tab delimited text.

To read the scatter point file:

- 1. Switch to the 2D Scatter Point module
- 2. Select the *Import* command from the *File* menu.
- 3. At the bottom of the *Open* dialog, change the filter to *.sp2.
- 4. Locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial*\geos2d.
- 5. Select the file entitled *plumedat.sp2*.

6. Click on the Open button.

A set of points should appear on the screen. These points represent locations where the concentration of a contaminant has been estimated using a soil gas survey. Our goal is to generate a map of the contaminant plume.

4.4 Changing the Display Options

You can change the appearance of the scatter points using the *Display Options* dialog:

- 1. Select the *Display Options* macro
- 2. Turn on the *Data colors* option
- 3. Select the button to the left of the *Scatter point symbols* toggle.
- 4. Choose one of the triangle shaped symbols.
- 5. Select the OK button to exit the Symbol Picker dialog.
- 6. Select the OK button to exit the Display Options dialog.

Each of the points should now be displayed with a colored triangle. The color of the symbol represents the relative concentration of the contaminant at the point. When displaying colored symbols, it is useful to also display a color legend.

- 1. Select the Color Ramp Options command from the Data menu.
- 2. Turn on the *Show Color Legend* option.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

Notice that the concentrations vary from zero to about 100.0.

4.5 Creating a Bounding Grid

The goal of this tutorial is to generate a series of contour plots illustrating the plume. To do this we will first create a grid that bounds the scatter point set and then we will interpolate the concentrations from the scatter points to the grid nodes. The grid will then be contoured.

To create the grid:

1. Select Bounding Grid from the Scatter Points menu.

Notice that the x and y dimensions of the grid are already defined. The default values shown in the dialog cause the grid to extend beyond the scatter points by 10% on each side.

- 2. Enter 60 for the number of cells in the x direction
- 3. Enter 40 for the number of cells in the y direction.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.
- 5. Select the *OK* button to accept the default z value.

A grid should appear on the screen that just encompasses the scatter point set.

4.6 Selecting an Interpolation Scheme

The next step is to select an interpolation scheme. Several interpolation schemes are supported in GMS because there is no one interpolation scheme that is superior in all situations. Typically, the best approach is to try several schemes and then determine which scheme is giving the most reasonable results. GMS has been structured in such a way that several different schemes can be tested quickly and easily.

4.7 Linear Interpolation

First we will try simple linear interpolation.

- 1. Select the Interp. Options command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Select the *Linear* option.
- 3. Select the OK button.

To interpolate to the grid:

- 1. Select the to 2D Grid command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Enter "linear" for the name of the new data set.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

Contouring the Grid 4.8

The concentrations have been interpolated to the grid but we must first set the appropriate display options before we can see the resulting contours.

- 1. Switch to the 2D Grid module
- 2. Select the Display Options macro
- 3. Turn on the *Contours* and *Fringes* options.
- Turn off the *Nodes* option. 4.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

A set of contours should now be displayed.

4.9 **Mapping Elevations**

It is often useful to display the grid in oblique view.



Note that the grid is flat. When we created the grid we assigned a z value of 0.0 to all of the grid nodes. To make the variation in concentrations easier to visualize, we can use the *Map Elevations* command to load the concentration data set values into the z coordinates of the grid nodes.

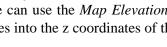
- 1. Select the *Map Elevations* command from the *Data* menu.
- 2. Select the data set entitled "linear".
- Choose the *OK* button. 3.

Shading the Grid 4.10

Color shading and hidden surface removal can be applied to provide an even more effective display of the grid.

Select the Shade macro

Notice that the nodes in the outer part of the grid still all have a concentration value equal to zero. When linear interpolation is performed, the scatter points are triangulated to form a temporary TIN. A plane equation is computed for





each triangle in the TIN and the coefficients of the plane equation are used to interpolate to points inside the triangle. Therefore, linear interpolation cannot be performed for grid nodes outside the convex hull of the TIN (the boundary of the TIN). As a result, these nodes are assigned a value of zero. However, for this application, a value of zero is appropriate since the concentrations of the scatter points on the perimeter of the scatter point set are zero.

4.11 Clough-Tocher Interpolation

Next, we will try Clough-Tocher interpolation.

- 1. Switch to the 2D Scatter Point module
- 2. Select the Interp. Options command from the Interpolation menu.
- 3. Select the *Clough-Tocher* option.
- 4. Select the OK button.

To interpolate to the grid:

- 1. Select the to 2D Grid command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Enter "ct" for the name of the new data set.
- 3. Turn on the *Map Elevations* toggle.

Note: This will cause the interpolated concentrations to be automatically mapped to the z coordinates of the nodes as the data set is interpolated.

- 4. Select the OK button.
- 5. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}\Theta$.

Once again, interpolation was only performed within the convex hull of the scatter point set. As with linear interpolation, the first step in Clough-Tocher interpolation is to triangulate the scatter point set to form a temporary TIN. However, rather than performing a linear interpolation of each triangle, a cubic surface patch is fitted over each triangle and the cubic patches are used in the interpolation.

4.12 Simple IDW Interpolation

The next scheme we will try is a simple form of inverse distance weighted (*IDW*) interpolation.

- 1. Select the Interp. Options command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Select the *Inverse distance weighted* option.
- 3. Select the *Options* button to the right of the *Inverse distance weighted* option.
- 4. In the *Nodal function* section at the top of the dialog, select the *Constant* option.
- 5. In the section entitled *Computation of interpolation weights*, select the *Use all points* option.
- 6. Select the OK button to exit the 2D IDW Interpolation Options dialog.
- 7. Select the *Close* button to exit the *2D Interpolation Options* dialog.

To interpolate to the grid:

- 1. Select the to 2D Grid command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Enter "idw_const" for the name of the new data set.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Shade* macro \bigcirc

The *IDW* scheme is a simple moving weighted averages scheme. To interpolate a value at a point, a weighted average of the nearby scatter points is used. The weights are an inverse function of distance. The closer a scatter point is to the interpolation point, the greater the weight given to the scatter point.

4.13 IDW Interpolation With Gradient Planes

One of the problems with simple *IDW* interpolation is that the interpolated data set always tends toward the mean of the data set in the voids between scatter points. As a result, local minima or maxima in the voids in the scatter point set are not properly inferred. To overcome this problem, a "nodal function" can be computed at each scatter point. A nodal function is a plane or quadratic function that is forced to pass through the scatter point and approximate the nearby scatter points in a least squares sense. When the

interpolation is performed, rather than computing an average of the data set values at the scatter point locations, an average is computed of the nodal functions of the nearby scatter point evaluated at the interpolation point. This approach allows local trends to be inferred and often results in a more accurate interpolation.

The next scheme we will try is IDW interpolation with planar nodal functions.

- 1. Select the Interp. Options command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Select the *Options* button to the right of the *Inverse distance weighted* option.
- 3. In the *Nodal function* section at the top of the dialog, select the *Gradient plane* option.
- 4. Select the OK button to exit the 2D IDW Interpolation Options dialog.
- 5. Select the *Close* button to exit the 2D Interpolation Options dialog.

To interpolate to the grid:

- 1. Select the to 2D Grid command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Enter "idw_planar" for the name of the new data set.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}\Theta$.

4.14 IDW Interpolation With Quadratic Nodal Functions

The nodal functions used in *IDW* interpolation can also be quadratic functions which are constrained to pass through the scatter point and approximate the neighboring scatter points in a least squares fashion. The averaging or blending of the quadratic functions during the interpolation stage often results in a very smooth surface.

- 1. Select the Interp. Options command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Select the *Options* button to the right of the *Inverse distance weighted* option.
- 3. In the *Nodal function* section at the top of the dialog, select the *Quadratic* option.
- 4. Select the OK button to exit the 2D IDW Interpolation Options dialog.

5. Select the *Close* button to exit the *2D Interpolation Options* dialog.

To interpolate to the grid:

- 1. Select the to 2D Grid command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Enter "idw_quad" for the name of the new data set.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Shade* macro $\overset{\circ}{}$

4.15 Truncation

Notice that the minimum value listed in the color legend is -80.0. Of course, this is impossible since there is no such thing as a negative concentration. By inferring trends, the nodal functions can sometimes project the plume values beyond zero and into the negative range. This type of error can be easily fixed using truncation.

- 1. Select the *Interp. Options* command from the *Interpolation* menu.
- 2. Turn on the *Truncate values* option.
- 3. Select the *Truncate to specified range* option.
- 4. Enter 0.0 for the min value and enter 150.0 for the max value.

We don't want the concentrations to go below zero but we will allow the interpolation scheme to infer a maximum concentration greater that the maximum measured value.

5. Select the *OK* button.

To interpolate to the grid:

- 1. Select the to 2D Grid command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Enter "idw_quad_trunc" for the name of the new data set.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}$

Notice that the concentrations are now mostly zero around the perimeter of the map.

4.16 Natural Neighbor Interpolation

Next, we will test the natural neighbor interpolation. Natural neighbor is similar to *IDW* interpolation in that it is a moving weighted average approach. However, the technique used to compute the weights in natural neighbor interpolation is based on topological relationships rather than distance alone. This approach tends to provide good results even when the scatter points are clustered.

- 1. Select the Interp. Options command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Select the *Natural neighbor* option.
- 3. Select the *Options* button to the right of the *Natural neighbor* option.

As with *IDW* interpolation, we can use higher order nodal functions if desired. We will use the quadratic option.

- 1. Select the *Quadratic* option.
- 2. In the *Bounding pseudo-points* section, turn OFF the *Extrapolate* beyond convex hull option.

Natural neighbor interpolation triangulates the scatter points as part of the interpolation process. The boundary of the resulting TIN corresponds to the convex hull of the scatter points. Computing points outside this hull is considered to be extrapolation. If the values are not extrapolated, a zero value is assigned to the grid nodes outside the convex hull. Thus, turning off the *Extrapolate beyond convex hull* option is a simple way to ensure that the concentrations on the perimeter of the map are zero.

- 3. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Natural Neighbor Options* dialog.
- 4. Select the *Close* button to exit the *2D Interpolation Options* dialog.

To interpolate to the grid:

- 1. Select the to 2D Grid command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Enter "nn" for the name of the new data set.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}\Theta$.

4.17 Kriging

The last interpolation scheme we will test is kriging. Kriging is based on the assumption that points that are near each other have a certain degree of spatial correlation, but points that are widely separated are statistically independent. Kriging is a set of linear regression routines that minimize estimation variance from a predefined covariance model.

- 1. Select the Interp. Options command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Select the *Kriging* option.
- 3. Select the Options button to the right of the Kriging option.

4.17.1 Creating the Experimental Variogram

There are a large number of options to be specified in the *Kriging Options* dialog. Fortunately, the defaults shown are adequate in most cases. However, a variogram must always be defined.

- 1. Select the *Edit Variograms* button.
- 2. Select the *New* button in the section entitled *Experimental variogram editor* in the upper right section of the *Variogram Editor* dialog.
- 3. Select the *OK* button to accept the defaults.

A curve should appear in the upper left window of the *Variogram Editor*. This curve is called an experimental variogram. The experimental variogram is found by calculating the variance in data set values of each scatter point in the set with respect to each of the other points and plotting the variances versus distance between the points. As can be seen in the plot of the experimental variogram, the shape of the variogram indicates that at small separation distances, the variance is small. In other words, points that are close together have similar data values. With many data sets, after a certain level of separation, the variance in the data values becomes somewhat random and the variogram oscillates about a value corresponding to the average variance. However, with concentration data, many of the points have zero values and this tends to pull the experimental variogram back down.

4.17.2 Creating the Model Variogram

Once the experimental variogram is computed, the next step is to define a model variogram. A model variogram is a simple mathematical function that models the trend in the experimental variogram. The model variogram is used in the kriging computations.

- 1. Select the *New* button in the section entitled *Nested structure specification* in the lower right corner of the *Variogram Editor*.
- 2. In the section entitled *Model functions* on the left side of the dialog, select the *Gaussian* option.
- 3. In the section entitled *Model parameters*, enter a value of 1965.0 for the *Contribution* and a value of 63.0 for the *Range*. Select the *Tab* key after entering each value.

At this point there should be a reasonable fit between the model and first part of the experimental variogram. The second part is difficult to fit in this case because of the zero values described above.

- 4. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Variogram Editor*.
- 5. Select the *Close* button to exit the *Kriging Options* dialog.
- 6. Select the *Close* button to exit the *2D Interpolation Options* dialog.

4.17.3 Interpolating to the Grid

To interpolate to the grid:

- 1. Select the to 2D Grid command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Enter "krig" for the name of the new data set.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}\Theta$

4.18 Switching Data Sets

Now that we have interpolated to the grid using several different interpolation schemes, we may wish to review the results by replotting some of the interpolated data sets. We can switch back to one of the previous data sets using the combo boxes at the top of the GMS window.

- 1. Switch to the 2D Grid module \blacksquare .
- 2. In the combo box titled *Data Set*, select the *linear* item.

Notice that the contours of the grid have changed but the elevations still correspond to the previous data set (kriging). To change the elevations to the

new data set we must select the *Map Elevations* command as explained earlier. However, in this case we will simply view the plot in plan view.

Select the *Plan View* macro

We can display a color shaded plot in plan view by changing the contouring options.

- 1. Select the *Display Options* macro
- 2. Turn off the *Cells* option and turn on the *Grid boundary* option.
- 3. Select the *Options* button to the right of the *Contours* option.
- 4. In the *Contour method* section in the lower left corner of the dialog, select the *Color fill between contours* option.
- 5. Select OK to exit the Contour Options dialog.
- 6. Select *Close* to exit the 2D Grid Display Options dialog.

4.19 Using the Data Calculator

Occasionally, it is useful to use the *Data Calculator* to compare two data sets generated by interpolation. As an example, we will use the *Data Calculator* to compute the difference between the kriging and natural neighbor data sets.

Select the Data Calculator command from the Data menu.

The currently available data sets are listed in the top of the dialog. Each data set is assigned a letter. Data sets are referenced in the mathematical expression using the letters. The "krig" data set should be labeled "i" and the "nn" data set should be labeled "h".

The next step is to enter an expression to compute the absolute value of the difference between the krig and nn data sets.

- 1. In the *Expression* field, enter "abs(h-i)".
- 2. In the *Result* field, enter "Difference".
- 3. Select the *Compute* button.

Now that we have computed the difference between two data sets it is helpful to view some basic statistics related to the new data set.

Select the Data Set Info button.

The resulting dialog displays basic statistics related to the active data set such as minimum, maximum, and mean data values.

- 1. Select the OK button to exit the Scalar Data Set Info dialog.
- 2. Select the *Done* button to exit the *Data Calculator* dialog.

The contour plot now displayed represents the data set we just computed. Any new data set computed using the *Data Calculator* is automatically designated the active data set.

4.20 Deleting All Data

To delete all of the data we have generated in this tutorial from memory:

- 1. Select the *New* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *No* to confirm the deletion.

4.21 Conclusion

This concludes the Two-Dimensional Geostatistics tutorial.

If you were originally running in normal mode and switched to demo mode to complete this tutorial, you can switch back to normal mode as follows:

- 1. Select the Normal Mode command from the File menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button at the prompt.

If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select No at the prompt.

CHAPTER

3D Geostatistics

Three-dimensional geostatistics (interpolation) are performed in GMS using the *3D Scatter Point* module. The module is used to interpolate from sets of 3D scatter points to 3D meshes and 3D grids. Several interpolation schemes are supported, including kriging. Interpolation is useful for defining initial conditions for 3D ground water models or for 3D site characterization.

The tools for manipulating 3D scatter point sets and the interpolation schemes supported in GMS are described in this tutorial. Before attempting this tutorial you should have completed the *Two-Dimensional Geostatistics* tutorials.

5.1 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

5.2 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial can be completed in either demo mode or normal mode. If you are already in demo mode, you may continue with the tutorial. If you are in normal mode, you will need to ensure that the necessary components have been licensed. This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

• The 3D Scatter Point module

• The *3D Grid* module 💼

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If each of these items is enabled, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to switch to demo mode before continuing. To switch to demo mode:

- 1. Select the *Demo Mode* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompts.

5.3 Importing a Scatter Point Set

To begin the tutorial, we will import a 3D scatter point set. A 3D scatter point set is similar to a 2D scatter point set except that each point has a z coordinate in addition to xy coordinates. As with the 2D scatter point set, one or more scalar data sets can be associated with each scatter point set representing values such as contaminant concentration, porosity, hydraulic conductivity, etc. The 3D scatter point set we will import and use with this tutorial has previously been entered into a text file using the *Tabular Scatter Point File* format.

To read the scatter point file:

- 1. Switch to the *3D Scatter Point* module
- 2. Select the *Import* command from the *File* menu.
- 3. In the *Open* dialog, change the filter to *.*sp3*.
- 4. Open the directory entitled *tutorial*\geos3d.
- 5. Select the file entitled *tank.sp3*.
- 6. Click on the Open button.
- 7. Select the *Oblique View* macro

A set of points should appear on the screen. Notice that the points are arranged in vertical columns. This hypothetical set of points is meant to represent a set of measurements of contaminant concentration in the vicinity of a leaky underground storage tank. Each column of points corresponds to a borehole or the path of a penetrometer along which concentrations were measured at uniform intervals. The goal of the tutorial is to use the tools for 3D geostatistics in GMS to interpolate from the scatter points to a grid and generate a graphical representation of the plume.

5.4 Displaying Data Colors

Next, we will change the display options so that the color of each point is representative of the concentration at the point.

- 1. Select the Display Options command in the Display menu.
- 2. Turn on the Data colors option.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Color Ramp Options* command from the *Data* menu.
- 5. Turn on the Show color legend option.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.

Notice that most of the values are zero. The nonzero values are all at about the same depth in the holes. This pattern is fairly common when dealing with light non-aqueous phase liquids (LNAPLs) which form a pancake shaped plume and float on the water table.

5.5 Z Magnification

Next, we will magnify the z coordinate so that the vertical variation in the data is more apparent.

- 1. Select the *Z* Magnification command in the View menu.
- 2. Enter a value of 2.0.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

5.6 Creating a Bounding Grid

To generate a graphical representation of the contaminant plume, we must first create a grid that bounds the scatter point set. We will then interpolate the data from the scatter points to the grid nodes. The grid will then be used to generate iso-surfaces.

To create the grid:

1. Select Bounding Grid from the Scatter Points menu.

Notice that the x, y, and z dimensions of the grid are already defined. The default values shown in the dialog cause the grid to extend beyond the scatter points by 10% on each side.

- 2. Enter 30 for the number of cells in the x direction.
- 3. Enter 10 for the number of cells in the y direction.
- 4. Enter 10 for the number of cells in the z direction.
- 5. Check to ensure that the default grid type is *Mesh Centered*.

Two types of grids are supported in GMS: cell-centered and meshcentered. While cell-centered is appropriate for groundwater models (MODFLOW), the mesh-centered approach is more appropriate when the grid will be used solely for interpolation.

6. Select the *OK* button.

A grid should appear on the screen that just encompasses the scatter point set.

5.7 Simple IDW Interpolation

The next step is to select an interpolation scheme. First, we will use the inverse distance weighted interpolation scheme (*IDW*).

- 1. Select the Interp. Options command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Select the *Inverse distance weighted* option.
- 3. Select the *Options* button to the right of the *Inverse distance weighted* option.
- 4. In the *Nodal function* section at the top of the dialog, select the *Constant* option.
- 5. In the section entitled *Computation of interpolation weights*, select the *Use subset of points* option.
- 6. Select the *Subset* button in the *Computation of interpolation weights* section.
- 7. Select the *Use nearest _____ points* option and enter 64 for the number of points.

- 8. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Subset Definition* dialog.
- 9. Select the *Close* button to exit the *IDW Interpolation Options* dialog.
- 10. Select the *Close* button to exit the *Interpolation Options* dialog.

To interpolate to the grid:

- 1. Select the to 3D Grid command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Enter "idw_const" for the name of the new data set.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

5.8 Displaying lso-surfaces

Now that we have interpolated to the nodes of the 3D grid there are several ways to visualize the contaminant plume. One of the most effective ways is to use iso-surfaces. Iso-surfaces are the three-dimensional equivalent of contour lines. An iso-surface represents a surface of a constant value (contaminant concentration in this case). To define and display iso-surfaces:

- 1. Switch to the 3D Grid module III.
- 2. Select the *Display Options* macro
- 3. Turn off the *Cells* option and turn on the *Grid shell, Fringes*, and *Iso-surfaces* options.
- 4. Select the Options button to the right of the Iso-Surfaces option.
- 5. In the first edit field in the list of values, type 3000.0.
- 6. Turn on the *Cap* option between values 1 & 2.
- 7. Select the OK button to exit the Iso-Surface Options dialog.
- 8. Select the OK button to exit the Display Options dialog.

You should now see a wireframe representation of the iso-surface. To generate a shaded image:

- 1. Select the Shading Options command from the Display menu.
- 2. Select the *Hidden surface* option, and turn on the following options: *Use light source, Smooth features,* and *Overlay edges.*

- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}$

A color shaded plot of the iso-surface should appear on the screen.

5.9 Interior Edge Removal

A series of edges are draped over the iso-surface plot. These edges represent the intersection of the iso-surface with the grid cells. The edges are displayed to help the user visualize the spatial variation or relief in the iso-surface. However, it is sometimes useful to inhibit the display of the edges in some areas. For example, in the regions where the plume intersects the grid the isosurface is flat. We will turn off the display of the edges in this area since they provide little benefit.

- 1. Select the Iso-Surface Options command from the Data menu.
- 2. At the bottom of the dialog, select the *Interior edge removal* option. This removes the edges between adjacent planar facets that are coplanar.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}\Theta$.

5.10 Fringe Specified Range

You may have noticed that the shell of the iso-surface is all one color, but the interior of the iso-surface (where the iso-surface intersects the boundary of the grid) varies in color according to the contaminant concentration. We can change the display options so that the color variation in this region is more distinct.

- 1. Select the Fringe Options command from the Data menu.
- 2. Select the *Color fringe specified range* option.
- 3. Enter 3000 for the Minimum fringe value.
- 4. Enter 9000 for the Maximum fringe value.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

6. Select the *Shade* macro $\mathbf{\hat{P}}$

5.11 Using the Z Scale Option

The scatter points we are using were obtained along vertical traces. In such cases, the distances between scatter points along the vertical traces are significantly smaller than the distances between scatter points along the horizontal plane. This disparity in scaling causes clustering and can be a source of poor results in some interpolation methods.

The effects of clustering along vertical traces can be minimized using the *z* scale option in the *Interpolation Options* dialog. The z coordinate of each of the scatter points is multiplied by the z scale parameter prior to interpolation. Thus, if the z scale parameter is greater than 1.0, scatter points along the same vertical axis appear farther apart than they really are and scatter points in the same horizontal plane appear closer than they really are. As a result, points in the same horizontal plane are given a higher relative weight than points along the z axis. This can result in improved accuracy, especially in cases where the horizontal correlation between scatter points is expected to be greater than the vertical correlation (which is typically the case due to horizontal layering of soils or due to spreading of the plume on the top of the water table).

To change the z scale option:

- 1. Switch to the *3D Scatter Point* module
- 2. Select the Interp. Options command from the Interpolation menu.
- 3. Change the *z* scale value to 8.0.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.
- 5. Select the to 3D Grid command from the Interpolation menu.
- 6. Enter "idw_const2" for the new data set name.
- 7. Select the *OK* button.
- 8. Select the *Shade* macro $\mathbf{\hat{e}}$

As can be seen, there is now much more correlation in the horizontal direction.

5.12 IDW Interpolation With Gradient Planes

As discussed in the *Two-Dimensional Geostatistics* tutorial, *IDW* interpolation can often be improved by defining higher order nodal functions at the scatter points. The same is true in three dimensions. Next, we will try *IDW* interpolation with gradient plane nodal functions.

- 1. Select the Interp. Options command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Select the *Options* button to the right of the *Inverse distance weighted* option.
- 3. In the *Nodal function* section at the top of the dialog, select the *Gradient plane* option.
- 4. Select the OK button to exit the IDW Interpolation Options dialog.
- 5. Select the *Close* button to exit the *Interpolation Options* dialog.

To interpolate to the grid:

- 1. Select the to 3D Grid command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Enter "idw_gp" for the name of the new data set.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Shade* macro $\mathbf{\hat{\mathbf{O}}}$.

5.13 IDW Interpolation With Quadratic Functions

Next, we will try IDW interpolation with quadratic nodal functions.

- 1. Select the Interp. Options command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Select the *Options* button to the right of the *Inverse distance weighted* option.
- 3. In the *Nodal function* section at the top of the dialog, select the *Quadratic* option.
- 4. In the section entitled *Computation of nodal function coefficients*, select the *Use all points* option.
- 5. Select the OK button to exit the IDW Interpolation Options dialog.
- 6. Select the *Close* button to exit the *Interpolation Options* dialog.

To interpolate to the grid:

- 1. Select the to 3D Grid command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Enter "idw_quad" for the name of the new data set.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}\Theta$.

5.14 Other Interpolation Schemes

Two other 3D interpolation schemes, natural neighbor interpolation and kriging, are supported in GMS. However, these schemes will not be reviewed in this tutorial. You are encouraged to experiment with these techniques at your convenience.

5.15 Viewing the Plume With a Cross Section

While iso-surfaces are effective for displaying contaminant plumes, it is often useful to use color-shaded cross sections to illustrate the variation in the contaminant concentration. Next, we will cut a horizontal cross section through the center of the plume.

- 1. Switch to the *3D Grid* module **.**
- 2. Select the *Side View* macro
- 3. Select the *Create Cross Section* tool
- 4. Cut a horizontal cross section through the grid by clicking to the left of the grid, moving the cursor to the right of the grid, and double clicking. Cut the cross section through the middle of the iso-surface.
- 5. Select the *Oblique View* macro

Before we shade the cross section, we will turn off the display of the isosurfaces.

- 1. Select the *Display Options* macro
- 2. Turn off the *Iso-surfaces* option.

3. Select the *OK* button.

Next, we will set up the display options for the cross-section.

- 1. Select the Cross Section Options command in the Data menu.
- 2. Turn on the Interior edge removal option.
- 3. Turn on the Fringes option.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

Finally, we will reset the *Fringe* options.

- 1. Select the *Fringe Options* command in the *Data* menu.
- 2. Turn off the Color fringe specified range option.
- 3. Select the OK button.

To shade the image:

Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}$

5.16 Using the Truncation Option

Notice the range of contaminant concentration values shown in the color legend at the upper left corner of the *Graphics Window*. A large percentage of the values are negative. This occurs due to the fact that a higher order nodal function was used. Both the quadratic and the gradient plane nodal functions infer trends in the data and try to preserve those trends. In some regions of the grid, the values at the scatter points are decreasing as you move away from the center of the plume. This decreasing trend is preserved by the interpolation scheme and the interpolated values approach zero and eventually become negative in some areas. However, a negative concentration does not make sense. This problem can be avoided by turning on the *Truncate values* option in the *Interpolation Options* dialog. This option can be used to force all negative values to have a value of zero.

- 1. Switch to the *3D Scatter Point* module
- 2. Select the Interp. Options command in the Interpolation menu.
- 3. Turn on the *Truncate values* option.
- 4. Select the Truncate to min/max of active data set option.

5. Select the OK button.

To interpolate to the grid:

- 1. Select the to 3D Grid command from the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Enter "idw_quad_trunc" for the name of the new data set.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Shade* macro $\mathbf{\hat{P}}$

Notice that the minimum value listed in the color legend is zero.

5.17 Setting up a Moving Cross Section Film Loop

It is possible to create several cross sections at different locations in the grid to illustrate the spatial variation of the plume. This process can be automated using the *Film Loop* utility in GMS. A film loop animation can be generated showing a color shaded cross section moving through the grid.

5.17.1 Display Options

Before setting up the film loop, we will first delete the existing cross section, turn off the color legend, and reset the fringe range.

- 1. Switch to the *3D Grid* module
- 2. Select the *Select Cross Sections* tool
- 3. Select the cross section by clicking on the diamond shaped symbol displayed on the cross section.
- 4. Select the *Delete* command from the *Edit* menu.
- 5. Select the *OK* button to confirm the deletion.
- 6. Select the *Color Ramp Options* command from the *Data* menu.
- 7. Turn off the *Show color legend* option.
- 8. Select the *OK* button.
- 9. Select the Fringe Options command from the Data menu.
- 10. Select the Color fringe specified range option.

- 11. Enter 1000.0 for the Minimum fringe value.
- 12. Enter 15000.0 for the Maximum fringe value.
- 13. Select the OK button.

5.17.2 Setting up the Film Loop

To set up the film loop:

- 1. Select the *Film Loop* command from the *Data* menu.
- 2. Select the *Setup* button.
- 3. Turn on the Animate cutting plane option.
- 4. Turn on the *Z* cutting plane.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

5.17.3 Playing Back the Film Loop

You should see some images appear on the screen. These are the frames of the film loop which are being generated. Once they are all generated you can play them back at a high speed. When the hourglass cursor disappears:

- 1. Select the *Play* button to begin the animation. You may wish to experiment with some of the other playback options.
- 2. After viewing the animation, select the *Stop* button to stop the animation.

5.18 Setting up a Moving Iso-Surface Film Loop

Another effective way to visualize the plume model is to generate a film loop showing a series of iso-surfaces corresponding to different iso-values.

To set up the film loop:

- 1. Select the Setup button in the Film Loop dialog.
- 2. Turn off the *Animate cutting plane* option.
- 3. Turn on the *Animate iso-surface* option.
- 4. Enter 1000.0 for the *Begin value*.

- 5. Enter 15000.0 for the *End value*.
- 6. Select the *Cap above* option.
- 7. Select the Display values option.
- 8. Select the *OK* button.
- 9. Once the images are generated, use the playback options to view the film loop.
- 10. After viewing the film loop, select the *Stop* button to stop the animation.
- 11. Select the *Done* button to exit the *Film Loop* dialog.

5.19 Deleting the Grid and Scatter Point Data

To delete all data currently in memory:

- 1. Select the New command in the File menu.
- 2. Select *No* to confirm the deletion.

5.20 Conclusion

This concludes the Three-Dimensional Geostatistics tutorial.

If you were originally running in normal mode and switched to demo mode to complete this tutorial, you can switch back to normal mode as follows:

- 1. Select the Normal Mode command from the File menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button at the prompt.

If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *No* at the prompt.

CHAPTER MODFLOW - Grid Approach

Two approaches can be used to construct a MODFLOW simulation in GMS: the grid approach and the conceptual model approach. The grid approach involves working directly with the 3D grid and applying sources/sinks and other model parameters on a cell-by-cell basis. The conceptual model approach involves using the GIS tools in the *Map* module to develop a conceptual model of the site being modeled. The data in the conceptual model are then copied to the grid.

The grid approach to MODFLOW pre-processing is described in this tutorial. In most cases, the conceptual model approach is more efficient than the grid approach. However, the grid approach is useful for simple problems or academic exercises where cell-by-cell editing is necessary. It is not necessary to complete this tutorial before beginning the MODFLOW - *Conceptual Model Approach* tutorial.

6.1 Description of Problem

The problem we will be solving in this tutorial is shown in Figure 6.1. This problem is a modified version of the sample problem described near the end of the MODFLOW *Reference Manual*. Three aquifers will be simulated using three layers in the computational grid. The grid covers a square region measuring 75000 ft by 75000 ft. The grid will consist of 15 rows and 15 columns, each cell measuring 5000 ft by 5000 ft in plan view. For simplicity, the elevation of the top and bottom of each layer will be flat. The hydraulic conductivity values shown are for the horizontal direction. We will use values equal to one fifth of these amounts for the vertical direction.

Flow into the system is due to infiltration from precipitation and will be defined as recharge in the input. Flow out of the system is due to buried drain tubes, discharging wells (not shown on the diagram), and a lake which is represented by a constant head boundary on the left. Starting heads will be set equal to zero, and a steady state solution will be computed.

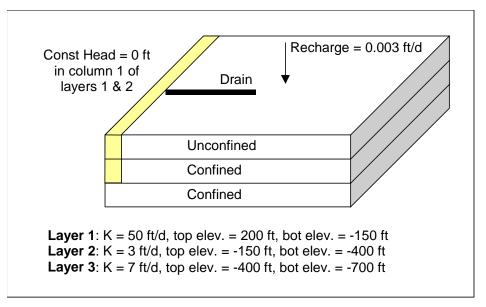


Figure 6.1 Sample Problem to be Solved.

6.2 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

6.3 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The 3D Grid module
- The MODFLOW interface

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If you have licensed and enabled each of the listed items on your version of GMS, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to obtain an updated password or hardware lock before continuing. The

tutorial cannot be completed in demo mode because the ability to save files is required.

6.4 Creating the Grid

The first step in solving the problem is to create the 3D finite difference grid.

- 1. Switch to the 3D Grid module $\textcircled{\blacksquare}$
- 2. Select the Create Grid command from the Grid menu.
- 3. In the section entitled *X*-dimension, enter 75000.0 for the *Length* value, and 15 for the *Number cells* value.
- 4. In the section entitled *Y*-dimension, enter 75000.0 for the *Length* value, and 15 for the *Number cells* value.
- 5. In the section entitled *Z*-dimension, enter 15000.0 for the *Length* value, and 3 for the *Number cells* value.

The thickness of the cells in the z direction does not affect the MODFLOW computations. The dimension we have entered was chosen to make the cells appear square when displayed prior to entering the layer elevation data.

6. Select the *OK* button.

The grid should appear in your window in plan view. A simplified representation of the grid should also appear in the *Mini-Grid Plot* in the *Tool Palette*.

6.5 Initializing the MODFLOW Simulation

The next step in setting up the model is to initialize the MODFLOW simulation.

Select the New Simulation command from the MODFLOW menu.

6.6 The Basic Package

The input to MODFLOW is subdivided into packages. Some of the packages are optional and some are required. One of the required packages is the Basic package. We will begin with this package:

Select the *Basic Package* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.

6.6.1 Titles

First, we will enter the titles (optional):

- 1. For the first line of the heading, enter: "GMS MODFLOW Tutorial Grid Approach".
- 2. For the second line of the heading, enter your name and the current date.

6.6.2 Packages

Next, we will select the packages.

Select the *Packages* button.

The packages dialog is used to specify which of the packages we will be using to set up the model. The Basic package is always used and, therefore, it cannot be turned off. To select the other packages:

- 1. Select the *Recharge* package.
- 2. Select the *Drain* package.
- 3. Select the *Well* package.
- 4. In the Solver section, select the Strongly Implicit Procedure package.
- 5. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Packages* dialog.

6.6.3 Units

At this point, we can define the units used in the model. The units we choose will be applied to edit fields in the GMS interface to remind of the proper units for each parameter.

- 1. Select the *Units* button.
- 2. Enter *ft* for the length unit and *d* for the time unit. We will ignore the other units (they are not used for flow simulations).
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

6.6.4 The IBOUND Array

The next step is to set up the IBOUND array. The IBOUND array is used to designate each cell as either active (IBOUND>0), inactive (IBOUND=0), or constant head (IBOUND<0). For our problem, all cells will be active, except for the first two layers in the leftmost column, which will be designated as constant head.

Select the IBOUND button.

The *IBOUND* dialog displays the values of the IBOUND array in a spreadsheet-like fashion, one layer at a time. The edit field in the upper left corner of the dialog can be used to change the current layer. For our problem, we need all of the values in the array to be greater than zero, except for the left column of the top two layers, which should be less than zero. By default, the values in the array should already be greater than zero. Therefore, all we need to do is change the values for the constant head cells. This can be accomplished by entering a value of -1 for each of the thirty constant head cells. However, there is another way to edit the IBOUND array that is much simpler for this case. This method will be described later in the tutorial. For now we will leave all of the cells active.

Select the *OK* button to exit the *IBOUND* dialog.

6.6.5 Starting Heads

The next step is to set up the Starting Heads array.

Select the Starting Heads button.

The Starting Heads array is used to establish an initial head value when performing a transient simulation. Since we are computing a steady state simulation, the initial head for each cell shouldn't make a difference in the final solution. However, the closer the starting head values are to the final head values, the more quickly MODFLOW will converge to a solution. Furthermore, for certain types of layers, if the starting head values are too low, MODFLOW may interpret the cells as being dry. For the problem we are solving, an initial value of zero everywhere should suffice.

The Starting Heads array is also used to establish the head values associated with constant head cells. For our problem, the constant head values are zero. Since all of the starting head values are already zero by default, we don't need to make any changes.

Select the OK button to exit the Starting Heads dialog.

6.6.6 Exiting the Dialog

This completes the input for this dialog.

Select the Close button to exit the MODFLOW Basic Package dialog.

6.7 Assigning IBOUND Values Directly to Cells

As mentioned above, the IBOUND values can be entered through the IBOUND Array dialog. In some cases, it is easier to assign values directly to cells. This can be accomplished using the *Cell Attributes* command. Before using the command, we must first select the cells in the leftmost column of the top two layers.

6.7.1 Viewing the Left Column

To simplify the selection of the cells, we will change the display so that we are viewing the leftmost layer.

Choose the View the J Axis macro

Notice that we are now viewing column number one (the leftmost column).

6.7.2 Selecting the Cells

To select the cells:

- 1. Choose the *Select Cells* tool
- 2. Drag a box around all of the cells in the top two layers of the grid.

6.7.3 Changing the IBOUND Value

To edit the IBOUND value:

- 1. Select the *Cell Attributes* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Enter a value of -1 for the *IBOUND* value.
- 3. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Cell Attributes* dialog.
- 4. To unselect the selected cells, click anywhere in the *Graphics Window* outside the grid.
- 5. Select the *View the K Axis* macro

Notice that a symbol is displayed in the cells we edited, indicating that the cells are constant head cells.

6.7.4 Checking the Values

To ensure that the IBOUND values were entered correctly:

- 1. Select the *Basic Package* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Select the *IBOUND* button.
- 3. Choose the up arrow to the right of the layer field in the upper left corner of the dialog to cycle through the layers.

Notice that the leftmost column of cells in the top two layers all have a value of -1. Most of the MODFLOW input data can be edited in GMS using either a spreadsheet-like dialog such as this, or by selecting a set of cells and entering a value directly, whichever is most convenient.

- 1. Select the OK button to exit the IBOUND Array dialog.
- 2. Select the *Close* button to exit the *MODFLOW Basic Package* dialog.

6.8 The BCF Package

The next step in setting up the model is to enter the data for the block-centered flow (BCF) package. The BCF package is required for all simulations. The block-centered flow package computes the conductances between each of the grid cells and sets up the finite difference equations for the cell to cell flow.

To enter the BCF data:

Select the *BCF Package* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.

6.8.1 Layer Types

The options on the right side of the dialog are used to define the layer type and conductance data for each layer. For our problem, we have three layers. The top layer is unconfined, and the bottom two layers are confined. Since this is the default, we don't need to make any changes to the layer types.

6.8.2 Layer Parameters

The buttons in the lower right portion of the dialog are for entering the parameters necessary for computing the cell to cell conductances.

MODFLOW requires a set of parameters for each layer depending on the layer type. The parameters include transmissivity and leakance that are a function of the layer thicknesses. By default, GMS uses the "true layer" approach for defining layer data. The user enters the top and bottom elevation and the vertical and horizontal hydraulic conductivity for each layer. When the data are written to the MODFLOW file, GMS automatically computes the required parameters for each layer.

6.8.3 Top Layer

First, we will enter the data for the top layer:

- 1. Select the *Top Elevation* button.
- 2. Select the *Constant -> Layer* button.
- 3. Enter a value of 200.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.
- 5. Select the OK button to exit the Top Elevation dialog.

Repeat this process to enter the following values for the top layer:

Parameter	Value
Bottom Elevation	-150 ft
Horizontal Hydraulic Conductivity	50 ft/d
Vertical Hydraulic Conductivity	5 ft/d

6.8.4 Middle Layer

Next, we will enter the data for the middle layer:

Select the up arrow to the right of the layer edit field at the top of the dialog.

Enter the following values for layer 2:

Parameter	Value
Bottom Elevation	-400 ft
Horizontal Hydraulic Conductivity	3 ft/d
Vertical Hydraulic Conductivity	0.5 ft/d

6.8.5 Bottom Layer

Switch to layer 3 and enter the following values:

Parameter	Value
Bottom Elevation	-700 ft
Horizontal Hydraulic Conductivity	7 ft/d
Vertical Hydraulic Conductivity	1.5 ft/d

This completes the data entry for this dialog.

Select the *Close* button to exit the MODFLOW *Block Centered Flow* dialog.

6.9 The Recharge Package

Next, we will enter the data for the Recharge package. The Recharge package is used to simulate recharge to an aquifer due to rainfall and infiltration. To enter the recharge data:

- 1. Select the *Recharge Package* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Select the *Constant -> Array* button.
- 3. Enter a value of 0.003.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.
- 5. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Recharge Package* dialog.

6.10 The Drain Package

We will now define the row of drains in the top layer of the model. To define the drains, we must first select the cells where the drains are located, and then select the *Point Sources/Sinks* command.

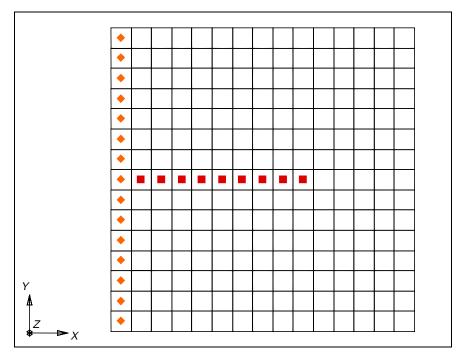
6.10.1 Selecting the Cells

The drains are located in the top layer (layer 1). Since this is the current layer, we don't need to change the view.

We need to select the cells on columns 2-10 of row 8. To select the cells:

- 1. Choose the *Select Cells* tool $\widehat{\mathbf{I}}$.
- 2. Select the cell at i=8, j=2.

Notice that as you move the cursor across the grid, the ijk indices of the cell beneath the cursor are displayed in the *Edit Window* at the bottom of the screen.



3. Hold down the *Shift* key to invoke the multi-select mode and select the cells on columns 3-10 of the same row as the cell you have already selected (Figure 6.2).

Figure 6.2 Cells to be Selected.

6.10.2 Assigning the Drains

To assign drains to the cells:

- 1. Select the *Point Sources/Sinks* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. In the *Drain* section, select the *Add* option. This adds a new instance of a drain to each of the selected cells.

At this point we must enter an elevation and a conductance for the selected drains. The drains all have the same conductance but the elevations are not all the same. We will leave the elevation at the default value for now and change the elevations later using the *Drain Package* dialog.

- 1. Enter a value of 80,000 for the conductance.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.
- 3. Unselect the cells by clicking anywhere outside the grid.

6.10.3 Assigning the Drain Elevations

At this point, we could select the drain cells one at a time and use the Cell BC dialog to edit the elevations. However, once the drains are defined, it is often easier to edit the values using the *Drain Package* dialog.

- 1. Select the Drain Package command from the MODFLOW menu.
- 2. Enter the following values for the elevations of the drains:

row (i)	col (j)	lay (k)	elev.
8	10	1	100.0
8	9	1	90.0
8	8	1	70.0
8	7	1	50.0
8	6	1	30.0
8	5	1	20.0
8	4	1	10.0
8	3	1	0.0
8	2	1	0.0

3. Select the *OK* button.

6.11 The Well Package

Next, we will define several wells by selecting the cells where the wells are located and using the *Point Sources/Sinks* command.

6.11.1 Top Layer Wells

Most of the wells are in the top layer but some are in the middle and bottom layers. We will define the wells in the top layers first.

1. While holding down the *Shift* key, select the following cells:

row (i)	col (j)	lay (k)
9	8	1
9	10	1
9	12	1
9	14	1
11	8	1
11	10	1
11	12	1
11	14	1
13	8	1
13	10	1
13	12	1
13	14	1

These cells are shown in Figure 6.3.

2. Select the *Point Sources/Sinks* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.

- 3. In the *Well* section, select the *Add* button.
- 4. Enter a Flow value of -432000 (the minus sign signifies extraction).
- 5. Select the *OK* button.
- 6. Unselect the cells by clicking anywhere outside the grid.

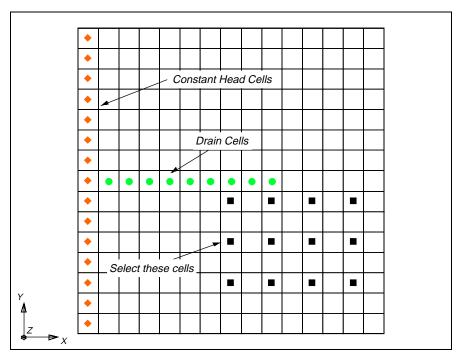


Figure 6.3 Cells to be Selected on Top Layer.

6.11.2 Middle Layer Wells

Next, we will define some wells on the middle layer. First, we need to view the middle layer.

Select the *Decrement* button **4** in the *Mini-Grid Plot*.

To select the cells:

1. While holding down the *Shift* key, select the following cells:

row (i)	col (j)	lay (k)
4	6	2
6	12	2

These cells are shown in Figure 6.4.

3. Select the *Point Sources/Sinks* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.

- 4. In the *Well* section, select the *Add* button.
- 5. Enter a *Flow* value of -432000.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.
- 7. Unselect the cells by clicking anywhere outside the grid.

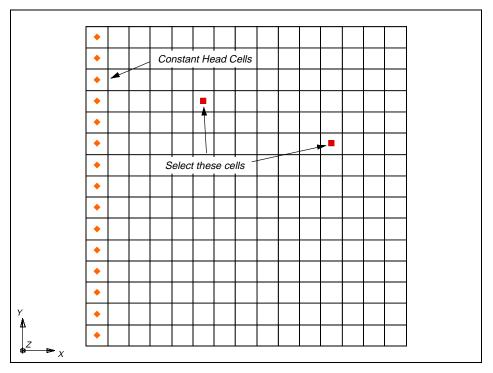


Figure 6.4 Cells to be Selected on Middle Layer.

6.11.3 Bottom Layer Well

Finally, we will define a single well on the bottom layer. To view the bottom layer:

Select the *Decrement* button **4** in the *Mini-Grid Plot*.

To select the cell:

1. Select the following cell:

row (i)	col (j)	lay (k)
5	11	3

The cell is shown in Figure 6.5.

3. Select the *Point Sources/Sinks* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.

- 4. In the Well section, select the Add button.
- 5. Enter a *Flow* value of -5.0.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.
- 7. Unselect the cells by clicking anywhere outside the grid.

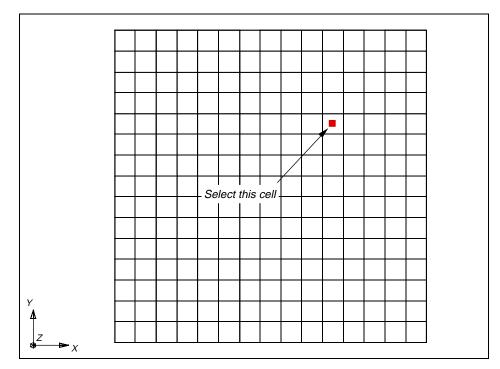


Figure 6.5 Cell to be Selected on Bottom Layer.

Now that all of the wells have been defined, we can go back to the top layer.

Select the *Increment* button **†** twice in the *Mini-Grid Plot*.

6.12 Saving the Simulation

Now we are ready to save the simulation and run MODFLOW.

- 1. Select the Save As command in the MODFLOW menu.
- 2. Move to the directory titled *tutorial*\modfgrid
- 3. Change the file name to *gridmod.mfs*.
- 4. Select the *Save* button.

6.13 Running MODFLOW

We are now ready to run MODFLOW:

- 1. Select the *Run MODFLOW* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

At this point MODFLOW is launched in a new window. The super file name is passed to MODFLOW as a command line argument. MODFLOW opens the file and begins the simulation. As the simulation proceeds, you should see some text output in the window reporting the solution progress. When the solution is finished, close the window and return to GMS.

6.14 Viewing the Solution

We are now ready to view the solution.

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

At this point you should see a set of head contours for the top layer.

6.14.1 Changing Layers

To view the solution on the middle layer:

Select the *Decrement* button \blacksquare in the *Mini-Grid Plot*.

To view the solution on the bottom layer:

Select the *Decrement* button \clubsuit .

To return to the top layer:

Select the *Increment* button **†** twice.

6.14.2 Color Fill Contours

You can also display the contours using a color fill option.

- 1. Select the *Contour Options* command in the *Data* menu.
- 2. In the lower left section of the dialog, select the *Color fill between contours* option.

3. Select the *OK* button.

6.14.3 Color Legend

Next, we will display a color legend.

- 1. Select the Color Ramp Options command in the Data menu.
- 2. In the upper right corner of the dialog, select the *Show color legend* option.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

6.15 Conclusion

This concludes the MODFLOW - *Basic* tutorial. If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *No* at the prompt.

CHAPTER

MODFLOW - Conceptual Model Approach

Two approaches can be used to construct a MODFLOW simulation in GMS: the grid approach or the conceptual model approach. The grid approach involves working directly with the 3D grid and applying sources/sinks and other model parameters on a cell-by-cell basis. The steps involved in the grid approach are described in the previous tutorial entitled MODFLOW - *Grid Approach*. The conceptual model approach involves using the GIS tools in the *Map* module to develop a conceptual model of the site being modeled. The location of sources/sinks, layer parameters such as hydraulic conductivity, model boundaries, and all other data necessary for the simulation can be defined at the conceptual model level. Once this model is complete, the grid is generated and the conceptual model is converted to the grid model and all of the cell-by-cell assignments are performed automatically. The steps involved in performing a MODFLOW simulation using the conceptual model approach are described in this tutorial. It is not necessary to complete the MODFLOW - *Grid Approach* tutorial before completing this tutorial.

7.1 Description of Problem

The problem we will be solving for this tutorial is illustrated in Figure 7.1a. The site is located in East Texas. We will assume that we are evaluating the suitability of a proposed landfill site with respect to potential groundwater contamination. The results of this simulation will be used as the flow field for a particle tracking and a transport simulation in the MODPATH tutorial and the MT3DMS tutorial.

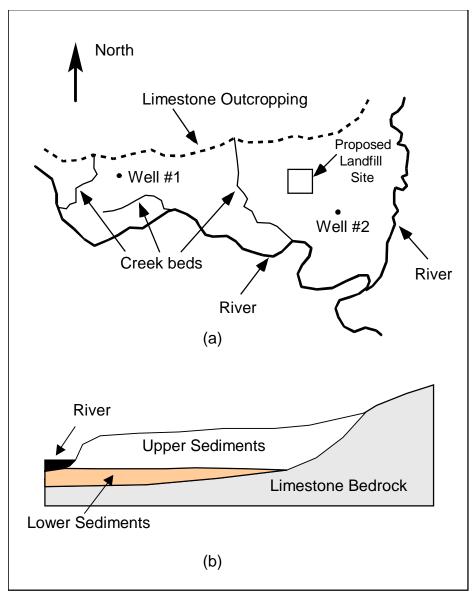


Figure 7.1 Site to be Modeled in This Tutorial. (a) Plan View of Site. (b) Typical North-South Cross Section Through Site.

We will be modeling the groundwater flow in the valley sediments bounded by the hills to the north and the two converging rivers to the south. A typical north-south cross section through the site is shown in Figure 7.1b. The site is underlain by limestone bedrock which outcrops to the hills at the north end of the site. There are two primary sediment layers. The upper layer will be modeled as an unconfined layer and the lower layer will be modeled as a confined layer.

The boundary to the north will be a no-flow boundary and the remaining boundary will be a specified head boundary corresponding to the average stage of the rivers. We will assume the influx to the system is primarily through recharge due to rainfall and run-on. There are some creek beds in the area which are sometimes dry but occasionally flow due to influx from the groundwater. We will represent these creek beds using drains. There are also two production wells in the area that will be included in the model.

NOTE: Although the site modeled in this tutorial is an actual site, the landfill and the hydrogeologic conditions at the site have been fabricated. The stresses and boundary conditions used in the simulation were selected to provide a simple yet broad sampling of the options available for defining a conceptual model.

7.2 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

7.3 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The 3D Grid module 節
- The 2D Scatter Point module
- The Map module
- The MODFLOW interface

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If you have licensed and enabled each of the listed items on your version of GMS, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to obtain an updated password or hardware lock before continuing. The tutorial cannot be completed in demo mode because the ability to save files is required.

7.4 Importing the Background Image

The first step in setting up the simulation is to import a digital image of the site being modeled. This image was created by scanning a portion of a USGS quadrangle map on a desktop scanner. The image was saved from the scanning software to a TIFF file using the "packbits" compression option. The

image was imported to GMS, registered, and a GMS project file was saved. To read in the image, we will open the project file. Once the image is imported to GMS, it can be displayed in the background as a guide for on screen digitizing and placement of model features.

7.4.1 Reading the Image

To import the image:

- 1. Select the *Open* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial*\modfmap.
- 3. Select the file entitled *start.gpr*.
- 4. Choose the *Open* button.

You should see a message indicating that the image is being resampled. Eventually the image should appear. Now that the image is imported, it will appear each time the screen is refreshed. All other objects are drawn on top of the image. The image only appears in plan view.

You are actually viewing only a portion of the complete TIFF image. It is possible to pan and zoom and resample the TIFF image to view a different region or to view at a different resolution. More information on manipulating TIFF images can be found in the GMS *Reference Manual*.

7.4.2 Image File vs. TIFF File

The project you just opened included a file called an "image" file. It is not the file containing the TIFF image. The TIFF file is called "easttex.tif" and is located in the same directory as the image file. When a TIFF file is first imported it must be registered. Registering a TIFF file involves selecting three points on the image and entering the real world coordinates of those points. These points are used to stretch and position the image when it is drawn on the screen so that it is drawn in the correct location. Once a TIFF image is registered, the registration data and the name of the TIFF file are saved to an image file. From that point on, the TIFF image can be imported and registered in one easy step by opening the image file. The image we are using in this tutorial was registered previously and the registration data were saved to a file named "start.img" when the project was saved.

7.5 Feature Objects

We are now ready to begin constructing the conceptual model. Conceptual models are constructed using feature objects in the *Map* module. Feature

objects in GMS have been patterned after Geographic Information Systems (GIS) objects and include points, nodes, arcs, and polygons (Figure 7.2). Points are xy locations that are not attached to an arc. Points have unique ids and can be assigned attributes. Points are typically used to represent wells. Arcs are sequences of line segments or edges which are grouped together as a single "polyline" entity. Arcs have unique ids and can be assigned attributes. Arcs are grouped together to form polygons or are used independently to represent linear features such as rivers. The two end points of an arc are called "nodes" and the intermediate points are called "vertices". Nodes have unique ids and can be assigned attributes. Vertices are used solely to define the geometry of the arc. Polygons are a group of connected arcs that form a closed loop. A polygon can consist of a single arc or multiple arcs. If two polygons are adjacent, the arc(s) forming the boundary between the polygons is shared (not duplicated).

Feature objects can be grouped into coverages. Each coverage represents a particular set of data. Our conceptual model will consist of three coverages: a coverage defining the model boundary and the location of the sources/sinks, a coverage defining the recharge zones, and a coverage defining the zones of hydraulic conductivity. The bottom elevations for the aquifer will be defined by interpolating from a set of observation well measurements.

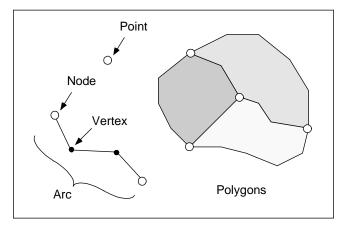


Figure 7.2 Feature Objects.

7.6 Building the Local Source/Sink Coverage

The first step in building the conceptual model is to construct the local sources/sinks coverage. This coverage defines the boundary of the region being modeled and it defines local sources/sinks including wells, rivers, drains, and general head boundaries.

Coverages in GMS are assigned a "coverage type" corresponding to the intended use of the coverage. The attributes which can be assigned to the feature objects in a coverage depend on the coverage type. When GMS is first

launched, a default empty coverage is created. This coverage is a "general" type coverage. Before creating the feature objects, we will change the coverage type to a local source/sink type.

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module \clubsuit
- 2. Select the Coverages command in the Feature Objects menu.
- 3. Change the *Default elevation* to 700. This elevation is assigned to all new objects and affects how the objects are displayed in oblique view.
- 4. Change the name of the coverage from "default coverage" to "Sources/Sinks".
- 5. Change the *Coverage type* to *MODF*/MT3D/MODP.
- 6. Select the Options button.
- 7. Check to ensure that the coverage type is *MODF*/MT3D *local sources/sinks* (this should be the default MODFLOW coverage type).
- 8. Select the OK button to return to the Coverages dialog.

7.6.1 Defining the Units

At this point, we can also define the units used in the conceptual model. The units we choose will be applied to edit fields in the GMS interface to remind us of the proper units for each parameter.

- 4. Select the *Units* button.
- 5. Enter *ft* for the length unit and *d* for the time unit. We will ignore the other units (they are not used for flow simulations).
- 6. Select the *OK* button.
- 7. Select *OK* again to exit the *Coverages* dialog.

7.6.2 Defining the Boundary

The next step is to define the outer boundary of the model. We will do this by creating an arc which forms a closed loop around the site.

- 1. Select the *Create Arc* tool
- 2. Begin the arc by clicking once on the left (west) side of the model at the location shown in Figure 7.3.

- 3. Create the arc by proceeding around the boundary of the site in a counter-clockwise direction and clicking on a sequence of points around the boundary. Don't worry about the spacing or the exact location of the points; just use enough points to define the approximate location of the boundary. The boundary on the south and east sides of the model should coincide with the rivers. The boundary along the top should coincide to the limestone outcropping as shown in Figure 7.3.
- 4. Double click on the point where you began to end the arc.

Note: As you are clicking on the points, if you make a mistake and wish to back up a point or two, press the *Backspace* key. If you wish to abort the arc and start over, press the *ESC* key.

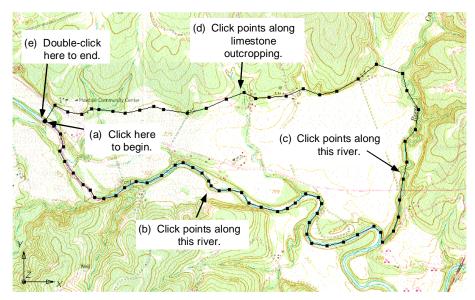


Figure 7.3 Creating the Boundary Arc.

7.6.3 Copying the Boundary

Since this arc defines the boundary of the model, it is useful to use this same boundary in the other coverages we will be creating. Thus, we will save a copy of this arc in a set of coverages for later use.

First, we will create a coverage for hydraulic conductivity for each layer.

- 1. Select the Coverages command in the Feature Objects menu.
- 2. Select the *Copy* command.
- 3. Change the name of the new coverage to "Layer 1".
- 4. Select the *Options* button.

- 5. Change the *Coverage type* to *MODF*/MT3D/MODP layer attributes.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.
- 7. With the *Layer 1* coverage still highlighted, select the *Copy* command again.
- 8. Change the name of the new coverage to "Layer 2".
- 9. Select the *Options* button.
- 10. Change the *Coverage type* to *MODF*/MT3D/MODP layer attributes.
- 11. In the middle of the dialog, change the *Assign from layer* and *to layer* fields to 2 and 2 (this will associate the coverage with layer 2).
- 12. Select the *OK* button.

Next, we will create a coverage for the recharge polygons.

- 1. Select the *Copy* command.
- 2. Change the name of the new coverage to "Recharge".
- 3. Select the *Options* button.
- 4. Change the *Coverage type* to *MODF*/MT3D *areal attributes*.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

Finally:

- 1. (IMPORTANT STEP!) Select the *Sources/Sinks* coverage so that it will be the active coverage when exiting the dialog. All editing is done to the active coverage.
- 2. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Coverages* dialog.

7.6.4 Defining the Specified Head Arcs

The next step is to define the specified head boundary along the south and east sides of the model. Before doing this, however, we must first split the arc we just created into three arcs. One arc will define the no-flow boundary along the top and the other two arcs will define the two rivers. An arc is split by selecting one or more vertices on the arc and converting the vertices to nodes.

1. Select the Select Vertices tool $\frac{1}{2}$

- 2. Select the two vertices shown in Figure 7.4. Vertex #1 is located at the junction of the two rivers. Vertex #2 is located at the top of the river on the east side of the model. To select both vertices at once, select the first vertex and then hold down the *Shift* key while selecting the other vertex.
- 3. Select the *Vertices <-> Nodes* command in the *Feature Objects* menu.

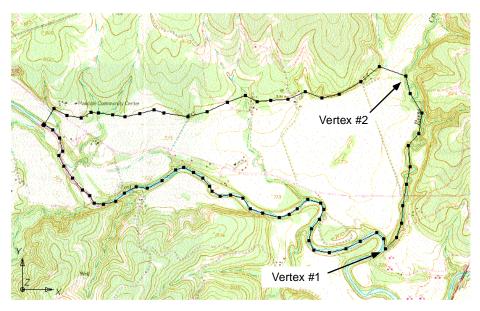


Figure 7.4 Convert Vertices to Nodes.

Now that we have defined the three arcs, we will specify the two arcs on the rivers as specified head arcs.

- 1. Select the *Select Arcs* tool .
- 2. Select the arcs on the south and east sides of the model by selecting one arc and holding down the *Shift* key while selecting the other arc.
- 3. Select the Attributes command in the Feature Objects menu.
- 4. Select the *Specified Head* type.
- 5. At the bottom of the dialog, change the second edit field to 2 so that the head boundary applies to both layers.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.
- 7. Click anywhere on the model other than on the arcs to unselect them.

Note that the color of the arcs has changed indicating the type of the arc.

The next step is to define the head at the nodes at the ends of the arcs. The head along a specified head arc is assumed to vary linearly along the length of the arc.

- 1. Select the *Select Points/Nodes* tool \checkmark .
- 2. Double click on the node on the west (left) end of the arc on the southern (bottom) boundary.
- 3. Enter a constant value for head of 697.0.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

In a similar fashion, assign a value of 685.0 to the node at the junction of the two rivers and a value of 703.0 to the node at the top of the arc on the east boundary of the model.

7.6.5 Defining the Drain Arcs

At this point, we will enter the arcs at the locations of the creek beds to define the drains.

- 1. Select the *Create Arc* tool
- 2. Create the arc labeled as arc #1 in Figure 7.5. Start by clicking on the bottom arc, create the arc by clicking points along the creek bed, and end the arc by double clicking on the top arc.

Notice that when you click in the vicinity of a vertex on an existing arc or on the edge of an arc, GMS automatically snaps the arc you are creating to the existing arc and makes a node at the junction of the two arcs.

3. Create the arcs labeled arc #2 and arc #3 in Figure 7.5 the same way you made arc #1.

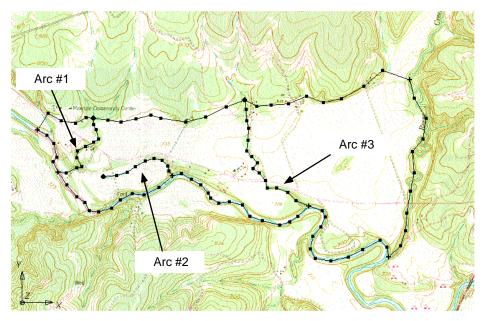


Figure 7.5 The Drain Arcs.

Next, we will define the arcs as drains and assign the conductance and elevation to the arcs.

- 1. Select the *Select Arcs* tool \mathbf{M}
- 2. Select all of the drain arcs by clicking on the arcs while holding down the *Shift* key.
- 3. Select the Attributes command in the Feature Objects menu.
- 4. Select the *Drain* option.
- 5. Enter a conductance of 6000.0.

This represents a conductance per unit length value. GMS automatically computes the appropriate cell conductance value when the drains are assigned to the grid cells.

6. Select the *OK* button.

The elevations of the drains are specified at the nodes of the arcs. The elevation is assumed to vary linearly along the arcs between the specified values.

- 1. Select the *Select Points/Nodes* tool **A**.
- 2. Double click on each of the nodes at the end points of the arcs and assign the elevations as shown in Figure 7.6.

Nodes 2, 4 & 6 are connected to both drain and specified head arcs. When assigning the attributes for these nodes, you will notice that both specified head and drain attributes can be edited for the nodes. To edit the drain elevation, select the drain option in the list box in the lower left section of the *Attributes* dialog.

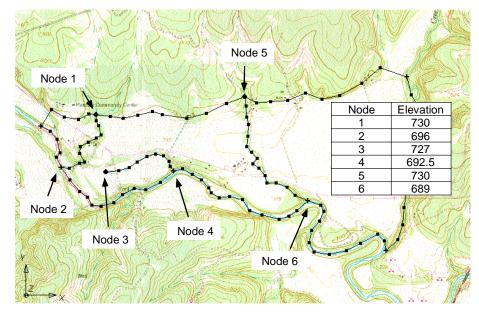


Figure 7.6 Elevations for Drain Nodes.

7.6.6 Building the polygons

With the local sources/sinks type coverage, the entire region to be modeled must be covered with non-overlapping polygons. This defines the active region of the grid. In most cases, all of the polygons will be variable head polygons (the default). However, other polygons may be used. For example, to model a lake, a general head polygon can be used. The simplest way to define the polygons is to first create all of the arcs used in the coverage and then select the *Build Polygons* command. This command searches through the arcs and creates a polygon for each of the closed loops defined by the arcs. These polygons are variable head by default but may be converted to other types by selecting the polygons and using the *Attributes* command.

Now that all of the arcs in the coverage have been created, we are ready to construct the polygons. All of our polygons will be variable head polygons.

- 1. Select the *Build Polygons* command from the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 2. When you are asked if you wish to build the polygons using all arcs, select *OK*.

Even though the polygons are created, there is no visible difference in the display. You can view the polygons if you wish by selecting the *Display Options* command in the *Feature Objects* menu and turning on the *Polygons (Fill)* option.

7.6.7 Creating the Wells

The final step in creating the local sources/sinks coverage is to define the wells. Wells are defined as point type objects. Two wells will be created.

- 1. Select the *Create Point* tool **.
- 2. Move the cursor to the approximate location of Well #1 shown in Figure 7.1 and click once with the mouse to create the point.
- 3. While the new point is selected, type the coordinates (2741.0, 4673.0) in the x and y edit fields at the top of the GMS window and hit the *Tab* or *Enter* key.
- 4. Select the Attributes command from the Feature Objects menu.
- 5. Select the *Well* option.
- 6. Enter a constant value of -24100.0 for the flux (pumping) rate.
- 7. Check to ensure that the well will be applied to layer 1 (this is the default).
- 8. Select the OK button.

In a similar fashion, create the other well at the location (10557.0, 3290.0) and assign a pumping rate of -100,000. However, for this well, change the edit fields at the bottom of the dialog so that the well is applied to layer two (change both the edit fields to 2).

Grid Refinement

A well represents a point of convergence in the groundwater flow and causes steep gradients in the head near the well. In order to accurately model the flow near wells, the grid is typically refined in the vicinity of the wells. This type of refinement can be performed automatically in GMS by assigning refinement data directly to the wells in the conceptual model.

- 1. Select the Select Points/Nodes tool
- 2. Select both wells by clicking on the wells while holding the *Shift* key.

- 3. Select the Attributes command in the Feature Objects menu.
- 4. Select the *Refine Point* button.
- 5. Select the *Refine grid in X direction* option and enter a value of 75.0 for the *Base cell size* and a value of 500.0 for the *Max cell size*.
- 6. Select the *Refine grid in Y direction* option and enter a value of 75.0 for the *Base cell size* and a value of 500.0 for the *Max cell size*.
- 7. Select the *OK* button twice to exit both dialogs.

7.7 Delineating the Recharge Zones

The next step in constructing the conceptual model is to construct the coverage which defines the recharge zones. We will assume that the recharge over the area being modeled is uniform except for the landfill. The recharge in the area of the landfill will be reduced due to the landfill liner system.

7.7.1 Switching Coverages

Before creating the recharge zones, we need to make the *Recharge* coverage the active coverage.

In the *Coverage* combo box at the top left corner of the window, select the "Recharge" coverage.

7.7.2 Creating the Landfill Boundary

Next, we will create the arc delineating the boundary of the landfill. To do this, we will first create a closed loop in the form of a rectangle at the approximate location of the landfill. We will then edit the nodes and vertices so that the arc coincides precisely with the boundary of the landfill.

- 1. Select the *Create Arc* tool
- 2. While watching the cursor coordinates in the bottom left corner of the *Edit Window*, begin at the lower left corner of the landfill and create a closed rectangular loop by clicking on the following four points representing corners of the landfill. Once you have clicked on the four points, double click on the first point to end the loop. Don't worry about getting the exact coordinates at this point. Simply create the points in the vicinity of the coordinates.

x	У
8810.0	3960.0
9640.0	3960.0
9640.0	4760.0
8810.0	4760.0

Now that the arc is created in the approximate location, we will edit the coordinates of the vertices and nodes to define the precise coordinates.

- 1. Select the *Select Points/Nodes* tool
- 2. Select the Node in the lower left corner of the landfill.
- 3. While the node is selected, enter the exact coordinates of the node in the *Edit Window*. Select the *Tab* key after entering each coordinate value.
- 4. Select the Select Vertices tool \mathbf{X} .
- 5. Starting with the vertex at the lower right corner of the landfill, select each of the three remaining vertices on the arc and enter the exact coordinates shown in the table above.

7.7.3 Building the Polygons

Now that the arcs are defined, we can build the polygons.

- 1. Select the Build Polygons command in the Feature Objects menu.
- 2. When you are asked if you wish to build the polygons using all arcs, select *OK*.

7.7.4 Assigning the Recharge Values

Now that the recharge zones are defined, we can assign the recharge values. We will assign one value to the landfill polygon, and another value to the remaining polygon.

- 1. Select the *Select Polygons* tool $\mathbf{\overline{M}}$.
- 2. Double click on the landfill polygon.
- 3. Turn on the *Recharge* option and enter a constant value of 0.0002 for the recharge rate.

Note: This recharge rate is small relative to the rate assigned to the other polygons. The landfill will be capped and lined and thus will

have a small recharge value. The recharge essentially represents a small amount of leachate that escapes from the landfill.

- 4. Select the *OK* button.
- 5. Double click on the outer polygon.
- 6. Turn on the *Recharge* option and enter a constant value of 0.0228 for the recharge rate.
- 7. Select the *OK* button.

7.8 Defining the Hydraulic Conductivity

Next we will enter the hydraulic conductivity for each layer. In many cases, you may wish to define multiple polygons defining hydraulic conductivity zones. For the sake of simplicity, we will use a constant value for each layer.

7.8.1 Top Layer

First, we will assign a K value for the top layer.

- 1. In the *Coverage* combo box, select the *Layer 1* coverage.
- 2. From the *Feature Objects* menu select the *Build Polygons* command and select *OK* at the prompt.
- 3. Double click on the polygon
- 4. Select the *Horizonal K* option and enter a value of 16.
- 5. Select the *Vertical K* option and enter a value of 4.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.

7.8.2 Bottom Layer

For the bottom layer:

- 1. In the *Coverage* combo box, select the "Layer 2" coverage.
- 2. From the *Feature Objects* menu select the *Build Polygons* command and select *OK* at the prompt.
- 3. Double click on the polygon

- 4. Select the *Horizonal K* option and enter a value of 32.
- 5. Select the *Vertical K* option and enter a value of 8.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.

This completes the definition of the coverages in the conceptual model. Before continuing to create the grid, we will make the sources/sinks coverage the active coverage.

In the *Coverage* combo box, select the "Sources/Sinks" coverage.

7.9 Locating the Grid Frame

Now that the coverages are complete, we are ready to create the grid. The first step in creating the grid is to define the location and orientation of the grid using the Grid Frame. The Grid Frame represents the outline of the grid. It can be positioned on top of our site map graphically.

- 1. Select the Grid Frame command in the Feature Objects menu.
- 2. Select the *New Frame* button.
- 3. Move the boundaries of the Grid Frame by dragging the handles that appear on the corners and the midsides of the Grid Frame with the mouse. Position the boundaries so that they just surround the boundaries of the conceptual model. You may need to move the *Grid Frame* dialog once or twice as you position the Grid Frame.

Note: In some cases, the best fit of the grid to the model is achieved when the grid is rotated. The Grid Frame can be rotated by selecting and dragging the rotation handle (the dot just to the right of the lower right corner of the Grid Frame). The Grid Frame can also be positioned and rotated using the buttons and edit fields in the *Grid Frame* dialog.

If the handles of the grid frame are not visible, you may wish to select the *Plan View* macro or adjust the values in the edit fields until they become visible.

- 4. For the Z coordinate, change the *Origin* to 550 and the *Dimension* to 200. This provides a set of initial values for the MODFLOW layer elevation arrays. Later, we will interpolate the layer elevations
- 5. Select the OK button to exit the Grid Frame dialog.

7.10 Creating the Grid

Now that the coverages and the Grid Frame are created, we are now ready to create the grid.

1. Select the Map -> 3D Grid command in the Feature Objects menu.

Notice that the grid is dimensioned using the data from the Grid Frame. If a Grid Frame does not exist, the grid is defaulted to surround the model with approximately 5% overlap on the sides. Also note that the number of cells in the x and y dimensions cannot be altered. This is because the number of rows and columns and the locations of the cell boundaries will be controlled by the refine point data entered at the wells.

- 2. Enter a value of 2 for the number of cells in the z direction.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

7.11 Defining the Active/Inactive Zones

Now that the grid is created, the next step is to define the active and inactive zones of the model. This is accomplished automatically using the information in the local sources/sinks coverage.

Select the *Activate Cells in Coverage(s)* command from the *Feature Objects* menu.

Each of the cells in the interior of any polygon in the local sources/sinks coverage is designated as active and each cell which is outside of all of the polygons is designated as inactive. Notice that the cells on the boundary are activated such that the no-flow boundary at the top of the model approximately coincides with the outer cell edges of the cells on the perimeter while the specified head boundaries approximately coincide with the cell centers of the cells on the perimeter.

7.12 Initializing the MODFLOW Data

Now that the grid is constructed and the active/inactive zones are delineated, the next step is to convert the conceptual model to a grid-based numerical model. Before doing this, however, we must first initialize the MODFLOW data:

1. Switch to the *3D Grid* module

2. Select the *New Simulation* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.

7.13 Converting the Conceptual Model

We are now ready to convert the conceptual model from a high-level feature object-based definition to a grid-based MODFLOW numerical model.

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module 4^{+1} .
- 2. Select the *Map* -> *MODFLOW* command in the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 3. Make sure the *All applicable coverages* option is selected and select *OK*.

Notice that the cells underlying the drains, wells, and specified head boundaries were all identified and assigned the appropriate sources/sinks. The heads and elevations of the cells were determined by linearly interpolating along the specified head and drain arcs. The conductances of the drain cells were determined by computing the length of the drain arc overlapped by each cell and multiplying that length by the conductance value assigned to the arc. In addition, the recharge and hydraulic conductivity values were assigned to the appropriate cells.

7.14 Interpolating Layer Elevations

The final step before we save the model and run MODFLOW is to define the layer elevations and the starting head. With the "true layer" approach used in GMS, top and bottom elevations are defined for each layer regardless of the layer type. For a two layer model, we need to define a layer elevation array for the top of layer one (the ground surface), the bottom of layer one, and the bottom of layer two. It is assumed that the top of layer two is equal to the bottom of layer one.

The simplest way to define layer elevations is to import a set of scatter points defining the elevations and interpolate the elevations directly to the layer arrays. In some cases, this is done using one set of scatter points. In this case, we will use two scatter point sets: one for the ground surface and one for the elevations of the bottom of layer one and the bottom of layer two. It is often convenient to use two scatter point sets in this fashion due to the source of the points. Ground surface points are often digitized from a map while layer elevations typically come from borehole data.

For most steady state MODFLOW models, a constant value of starting head will lead to a good solution. In some cases, the model stability and speed of

convergence can be improved by selecting a set of starting heads that are closer to the final solution. We will use the latter method. Our starting heads will be defined by a surface that is a constant depth below the ground surface.

7.14.1 Importing the Ground Surface Scatter Points

The ground surface scatter points have been entered in a simple text file which can be imported to GMS. The file is in a tabular format with multiple columns and was created with a text editor. The columns include the x and y coordinates and the ground surface elevation.

- 1. Switch to the 2D Scatter Point module
- 2. Select the Import command in the File menu.
- 3. In the Open dialog, select the *.sp2 filter.
- 4. Locate and open the directory titled *tutorial*\modfmap.
- 5. Select the file titled *terrain.sp2*.
- 6. Select the *Open* button.

A set of scatter point symbols should appear on the model.

7.14.2 Calculating a Starting Head Data Set

The starting head values will be defined as a surface parallel to the ground surface at a depth of 10 ft below the ground surface. We can define such a data set using the *Data Calculator*.

Select the Data Calculator command in the Data menu.

Note that the available data sets are listed in the top of the dialog. We can create a new dialog simply by typing an expression and referencing each data set by the letter shown in the list.

- 1. In the *Expression* field, type "a-10".
- 2. In the *Result* field, type "starting head".
- 3. Select the *Compute* button.
- 4. Select the *Done* button to exit the dialog.

7.14.3 Interpolating the Heads and Elevations

Next, we will interpolate the ground surface elevations and starting heads to the MODFLOW grid.

Select the to MODFLOW Layers command in the Interpolation menu.

The list on the top left side of the dialog represents the data sets available in the active scatter point set. The list on the top right side lists the MODFLOW layer arrays that can be interpolated to. The dialog is used to associate each of the data sets with the appropriate layer arrays. This is accomplished by selecting an item from each list and selecting the *Map* button. The list at the bottom shows the relationships that have been mapped. The starting head array is already mapped since the association is obvious from the names used for the data set and the array. We also want to map the ground elevations to the top of layer one.

- 1. Check to make sure that the "ground_elev" data set and the "Top Elevations Layer 1" array are highlighted.
- 2. Select the *Map* button.
- 3. Select the OK button to perform the interpolation.

7.14.4 Importing the Layer Elevation Scatter Points

Next, we will import the scatter points defining the layer elevations.

- 1. Select the Import command in the File menu.
- 2. In the Open dialog, select the *.sp2 filter.
- 3. Select the file titled "elevs.sp2".
- 4. Select the *Open* button.

A second set of scatter point symbols should appear on the model.

7.14.5 Interpolating the Layer Elevations

To import the layer elevations:

- 1. Select the to MODFLOW Layers command in the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Check to confirm that the mappings are properly selected (the correct mapping should be selected by default).
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

7.14.6 Adjusting the Display

Now that we are finished with the interpolation, we can hide the scatter point sets.

- 1. Select the *Select Scatter Point Sets* tool 🔀.
- 2. Drag a box around both of the scatter point set symbols (the pentagons).
- 3. Select the *Hide* macro

We will also turn off the grid frame.

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module **†**
- 2. Select the Display Options command in the Display menu.
- 3. Turn off the *Grid frame* option.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

7.14.7 Viewing the Model Cross Sections

To check the interpolation, we will view a cross section.

- 1. Switch to the 3D Grid module \blacksquare
- 2. Select a cell somewhere near the center of the model.
- 3. Select the *View J Axis* macro .

To get a better view of the cross section, we will increase the z magnification.

- 1. Select the *Z* Magnification command from the View menu.
- 2. Enter a value of 5 for the Z magnification factor.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

You may wish to use the arrow buttons in the *Tool Palette* to view different columns in the grid.

Note that on the right side of the cross section, the bottom layer pinches out and the bottom elevations are greater than the top elevations. This must be fixed before running the model.

7.14.8 Fixing the Elevation Arrays

GMS provides a convenient set of tools for fixing layer array problems. These tools are located in the *Model Checker*.

- 1. Select the *Check Simulation* command in the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Select the Run Check button.
- 3. Select the *Fix Layer Errors* button at the top of the dialog.

Notice that many errors were found for layer two. There are several ways to fix these layers. We will use the *Truncate to bedrock* option. This option makes all cells below the bottom layer inactive.

- 1. Select the *Truncate to bedrock* option.
- 2. Select the *Fix Affected Layers* button (it does not matter which layer is selected, all layers that are affected will be fixed).
- 3. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Fix Layer Errors* dialog.
- 4. Select the *Done* button to exit the *Model Checker*.

Notice that the layer errors have been fixed. Another way to view the layer corrections is in plan view.

- 1. Switch to plan view by selecting the *View K Axis* macro $\stackrel{\text{lin}}{=}$.
- 2. In the mini-grid display, select the down arrow 4 to view the second layer.

Notice that the cells at the upper (Northern) edge of the model in layer two are inactive.

Switch back to the top layer by selecting the up arrow \clubsuit .

7.15 Checking the Simulation

At this point, we have completely defined the MODFLOW data and we are ready to run the simulation. However, before saving the simulation and running MODFLOW, we should run the MODFLOW *Model Checker* one more time and check for other errors. Because of the significant amount of data required for a MODFLOW simulation, it is often easy to omit some of the required data or to define inconsistent or incompatible options and parameters. Such errors will either cause MODFLOW to crash or to generate an erroneous solution. The purpose of the *Model Checker* is to analyze the input data currently defined for a MODFLOW simulation and report any obvious errors or potential problems. Running the *Model Checker* successfully does not guarantee that a solution will be correct. It simply serves as an initial check on the input data and can save a considerable amount of time that would otherwise be lost tracking down input errors.

To run the Model Checker:

- 1. Select the Check Simulation command in the MODFLOW menu.
- 2. Select the *Run Check* button.

A list of messages are shown for each of the MODFLOW input packages. If you have done everything correctly, there should be no errors for any of the packages but perhaps a few warnings. When there is a warning or an error, the *Model Checker* helps fix the problems. If you select or highlight one of the errors in the error list, a list of suggested steps for fixing the problem appears in the window at the bottom of the *Model Checker*. When appropriate, it also selects the cells or layers associated with the problem. The *Model Checker* can be left on the desktop while the steps are followed to fix the problem. The *Model Checker* operates differently than most other dialogs in GMS. It acts as a "modeless" dialog. This means that you do not have to exit the dialog to continue working with other functions within GMS. Once you think you have fixed the problem, the *Run Check* command can then immediately be executed again to ensure that the error has been fixed.

Select the *Done* button to exit the *Model Checker*.

7.16 Saving the Project

Now we are ready to save the project and run MODFLOW.

- 1. Select the *Save As* command in the *File* menu.
- 2. Enter "easttex" as the name of the model.
- 3. Select the *Save* button.

Note: Saving the project not only saves the MODFLOW files but is saves all data associated with the project including the feature objects and scatter points. When running multiple versions of the MODFLOW simulation the *Save/Save As* commands in the *MODFLOW* menu can be used to save different versions of the MODFLOW simulation without saving the entire project.

7.17 Running MODFLOW

We are now ready to run MODFLOW.

- 1. Select the Run MODFLOW command from the MODFLOW menu.
- 2. Select the OK button.

At this point MODFLOW is launched in a new window. MODFLOW opens the file and begins the simulation. As the simulation proceeds, you should see some text output in the window reporting the solution progress. When the solution is finished, close the window and return to GMS.

7.18 Viewing the Head Contours

We are now ready to view the solution.

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

A set of contours should appear. To get better contrast between the contours and the background image, we will change the contour color to blue.

- 1. Select the Contour Options command in the Data menu.
- 2. Click on the *Contour color* window.
- 3. Select the *Color* button.
- 4. Select a dark blue color.
- 5. Select the *OK* button repeatedly to exit all dialogs.

To view the contours for the second layer:

- 1. Select the down arrow \blacksquare in the mini-grid display.
- 2. After viewing the contours, return to the top layer by selecting the up arrow **†**.

7.19 Viewing the Water Table in Side View

Another interesting way to view a solution is in side view.

1. Select a cell somewhere near the well on the right side of the model.



Notice that the computed head values are used to plot a water table profile. Use the left and right arrow buttons in the mini-grid display to move back and forth through the grid. You should see a cone of depression at the well. When finished:

Select the View K Axis macro

7.20 Viewing the Flow Budget

The MODFLOW solution consists of both a head file and a cell-by-cell flow (CCF) file. GMS can use the CCF file to display flow budget values. For example, we may want to know if any water exited from the drains. This can be accomplished simply by clicking on a drain arc.

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module +
- 2. Choose the *Select Arcs* tool .
- 3. Click on the rightmost drain arc.

Notice that the total flux through the arc is displayed in the strip at the bottom of the window. Next, we will view the flux to the river.

- 1. Click on one of the specified head arcs at the bottom and view the flux.
- 2. Hold down the *Shift* key and select each of the specified head arcs.

Notice that the total flux is shown for all selected arcs. These same steps can be used to display flux through polygons such as recharge polygons. Flux for a set of selected cells can be displayed as follows:

- 1. Switch to the *3D Grid* module
- 2. Select a group of cells by dragging a box around the cells.
- 3. Select the *Flow Budget* command from the *Data* menu.

This dialog shows a comprehensive flow budget for the selected cells.

- 1. Select *Done* to exit the dialog.
- 2. Click anywhere outside the model to unselect the cells.

7.21 Adding Annotation

GMS includes a wide selection of tools for preparing graphical output to include in a final report of a modeling study. These options include printing, exporting DXF or TIFF files, and copying images to the clipboard.

Before printing an image or copying the image into another document, it is often useful to add some annotation to the image in order to provide a title or highlight important features. Annotation can be added with the drawing tools provided in the *Map* module. For example, to place a label on a well:

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module **T**
- 2. Select the *Create Text* tool **A**
- 3. Click just above the well on the east (right) side.
- 4. Delete the default text string "text" and type "Well #2".
- 5. Select the *Fill behind text* option.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.

To reposition the text:

- 1. Select the *Select Drawing Objects* tool
- 2. Click on the text and drag it to a new location.

To change the text:

- 1. Double click on the text.
- 2. Change the name to "Well 54A".
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

To add a title to the drawing:

- 1. Select the *Create Text* tool **A**.
- 2. Click in the top center of the Graphics Window, just above the model.
- 3. Enter "East Texas Groundwater Model" for the title.
- 4. Select the *Fill behind text* option.

- 5. Select the *Font* button.
- 6. Change the font size to 18 pt.
- 7. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Font* dialog.
- 8. Select the OK button to exit the Text dialog.

Sometimes it is useful to use both an arrow and a label to highlight a feature.

- 1. Click in the lower left corner of the window, a few centimeters below the bottom boundary of the model.
- 2. Enter "Lampasas River" for the text.
- 3. Select the *Fill behind text* option.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.
- 5. Select the *Create Line* tool
- 6. Draw a line from the "Lampasas River" text to the lower model boundary by clicking near the text and then double clicking at the end of the line near the lower boundary.
- 7. Select the *Select Drawing Objects* tool
- 8. Double click on the line you just created.
- 9. In the Arrowheads section, select the End option.
- 10. Select the *OK* button.
- 11. Click anywhere in window other than on a drawing object to unselect the arrow.

7.22 Conclusion

This concludes the MODFLOW - *Conceptual Model Approach* tutorial. If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *No* at the prompt.

CHAPTER MODPATH

This tutorial describes the steps involved in setting up a MODPATH simulation in GMS. MODPATH is a particle tracking code developed by the U.S. Geological Survey. MODPATH tracks the trajectory of a set of particles from user-defined starting locations using the MODFLOW solution as the flow field. The particles can be tracked either forward or backward in time. Particle tracking solutions have a variety of applications, including the determination of zones of influence for injection and extraction wells.

8.1 Description of Problem

The problem we will be solving for this tutorial is an extension of the problem described in the previous tutorial entitled MODFLOW - *Conceptual Model Approach*. If you have not yet completed the previous tutorial, you may wish to do so before continuing.

In the previous tutorial, a site in East Texas was modeled. We will be using the solution from this model as our flow field for the particle tracking simulation. The model includes a proposed landfill. For this tutorial, we will be performing two particle tracking simulations to analyze the long term effects of contamination from the landfill. In the first simulation, we will be performing reverse particle tracking from the well on the east side of the model to see if the zone of influence of the well overlaps the landfill. In the second simulation, we will be performing a forward tracking simulation using an array of particles starting at the landfill to analyze the region of potential contamination for the landfill.

8.2 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

8.3 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The *3D Grid* module
- The *Map* module
- The MODPATH interface.

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If you have licensed and enabled each of the listed items on your version of GMS, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to obtain an updated password or hardware lock before continuing.

8.4 Importing the Project

The first step is to import the East Texas project. This will read in the MODFLOW model and solution, and all other files associated with the model.

To import the project:

- 1. Select the *Open* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. In the *Open* dialog, locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial**modfmap**sample*.
- 3. Select the file entitled *sample.gpr*.
- 4. Choose the *Open* button.

8.5 Initializing the MODPATH Simulation

Now that the MODFLOW model is in memory, we can initialize the MODPATH simulation.

Switch to the *3D Grid* module **B**.

Select the New Simulation command from the MODPATH menu.

8.6 Assigning the Porosities

In order to calculate the tracking times, a porosity must be defined for each of the cells in the grid. We will assign one porosity value to layer one and another to layer two. Porosities will be assigned to polygons in the conceptual model and then converted to the grid cells using the $Map \rightarrow MODPATH$ command.

- 1. Switch to the *Map* Module
- 2. In the *Coverages* combo box at the top of the GMS window, select the *Layer 1* coverage.
- 3. Choose the *Select Polygons Tool* **D**.
- 4. Double click on the layer polygon.
- 5. Turn on the *Aquifer Porosity* option and enter a value of 0.30 for the porosity.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.

Next, we will assign a porosity value to layer 2.

- 1. In the *Coverages* combo box at the top of the GMS window, select the *Layer 2* coverage.
- 2. Double click on the layer polygon.
- 3. Turn on the *Aquifer Porosity* option and enter a value of 0.40 for the porosity.
- 4. Select the OK button.
- 5. Click anywhere outside the model to unselect the highlighted polygon.

8.6.1 Assigning the Porosities to the Cells

The last step in assigning the porosities is to convert the porosities defined at the polygons to cell-by-cell values.

- 1. Select the *Map* -> MODPATH command in the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt.

8.7 Defining the Starting Locations

Next, we need to specify the starting locations for the particles. We will create a set of particle starting locations surrounding the cell containing the well on the east side of the model.

8.7.1 Selecting the Cell

To assign the starting locations, we must first select the cell containing the well. To make sure we select the correct cell, we will zoom in on the model in the area of the well.

- 1. Switch to the *3D Grid* module
- 2. In the mini-grid display in the *Tool Palette*, select the down button **4** to move to the second layer (the well is in the bottom layer).
- 3. Select the *Zoom* tool \bigcirc
- 4. Click once on the location of the well on the right side of the model. This zooms the image by a factor of two around the point clicked.
- 5. Click multiple times if necessary until the cell containing the well is clearly distinguishable from the surrounding cells.

To select the cell:

- 1. Select the *Select Cells* tool
- 2. Click in the cell containing the well.

8.7.2 Creating the Starting Locations

To generate the starting locations:

- 1. Choose the Generate Particles command from the MODPATH menu.
- 2. Select the *Distribute starting points on cell faces* option.

- 3. For Face 1, change the number in the *NZ* field to 2. Do the same for Face 3, 2 and 4.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

A set of particles should appear around the perimeter of the cell. To restore the display:

- 1. Select the *Frame* macro
- 2. Select the up arrow **†** to return to layer one.

8.8 Specifying the Tracking Direction

The last step in setting up the MODPATH data is to specify the tracking direction. Since we want to delineate the capture zone for the well, we will perform backward tracking and track the particles upgradient.

- 1. Select the General Options command from the MODPATH menu.
- 2. At the top of the dialog, select the *Backward* option.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

8.9 Saving the Simulation

We are now ready to save the simulation and run MODPATH.

- 1. Select the Save As command from the MODPATH menu.
- 2. In the *Save File* dialog, locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial*\modpath.
- 3. Enter *path1.rsp* for the file name.
- 4. Select the *Save* button.

8.10 Running MODPATH

We are now ready to run MODPATH. To launch MODPATH:

- 1. Select the Run MODPATH command from the MODPATH menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

At this point MODPATH is launched in a new window. The response file name is passed to MODPATH as a command line argument. MODPATH opens the file and begins the simulation. As the simulation proceeds, you should see some text output in the window reporting the solution progress. When the solution is finished, close the window and return to GMS.

8.11 Viewing the Solution

To view the computed pathlines:

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command from the *MODPATH* menu.
- 2. Select the OK button.

You should see a set of pathlines which converge on the east well. Notice that the pathlines intersect the area covered by the proposed landfill, indicating a potential for leachate from the landfill to appear in the water pumped from the well.

8.11.1 Viewing the Pathlines in Cross Section View

The 3D nature of the pathlines is best seen in cross section view.

- 1. Select a cell near the right landfill.
- 2. Select the *View J Axis* macro

You may wish to move back and forth through the columns. When finished:

Select the View K Axis macro

8.12 Tracking Particles from the Landfill

Next, we will perform a second particle tracking simulation. This time we will perform forward tracking from a set of starting locations which coincide with the site of the proposed landfill.

8.12.1 Changing the Tracking Direction

First, we will change the tracking direction to forward.

- 1. Select the General Options command from the MODPATH menu.
- 2. At the top of the dialog, select the *Forward* option.

3. Select the *OK* button.

8.12.2 Deleting the Starting Locations

Next, we will delete the starting locations that we created around the well.

- 1. Select the *Select Starting Locations* tool **•**.
- 2. Select the particles by dragging a rectangle that surrounds the east well.
- 3. Delete the particles by selecting the *Backspace* key or selecting the *Delete* command from the *Edit* menu.
- 4. Select *OK* at the first prompt.
- 5. Select *OK* at the second prompt.

8.12.3 Defining the New Starting Locations

Finally, we will create a new set of starting locations at the site of the proposed landfill. The particles will be placed on the top of the ground water table to simulate leachate entering from the surface.

Before selecting the cells, we will make the recharge coverage the active coverage so that the landfill polygon is clearly visible.

1. In the *Coverages* combo box at the top of the window, select the Recharge coverage.

To select the cells:

- 1. Select the *Select Cells* tool \blacksquare .
- 2. Select the cells covered by the landfill by dragging a rectangle that coincides precisely with the landfill boundary.
- 3. Select the *Generate Particles* command in the *MODPATH* menu.
- 4. Select the Distribute starting points on w.t. surface option.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.
- 6. Click anywhere outside the grid to unselect the cells.

8.13 Saving the Simulation

We are now ready to save the new simulation.

- 1. Select the Save As command in the MODPATH menu.
- 2. Change the file name to *path2.rsp*.
- 3. Select the *Save* button.

8.14 Running MODPATH

Using the same steps you followed above, execute MODPATH and compute a solution with the *path2.rsp* response file.

8.15 Viewing the Solution

To view the results from the second simulation:

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command from the *MODPATH* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

Now you should see a set of pathlines starting at the landfill and terminating in the well, the creek bed, and in the river at the bottom of the model. You may wish to view this solution in cross section view as well.

8.16 Conclusion

This concludes the MODPATH tutorial. If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *No* at the prompt.

CHAPTER

MT3DMS - Grid Approach

This tutorial describes how to perform an MT3DMS simulation within GMS. An MT3DMS model can be constructed in GMS using one of two approaches: the conceptual model approach or the grid approach. With the conceptual model approach, the sources/sinks and zones in the model are defined with GIS objects and automatically assigned to the grid. With the grid approach, values are manually assigned to the grid. While the conceptual model approach is generally preferable for large, complicated models, simple models can be easily constructed using the grid approach. The grid approach is described in this tutorial. The following tutorial describes the conceptual model approach.

9.1 Description of Problem

The problem to be solved in this tutorial is shown in Figure 14.1. This problem corresponds to the sixth sample problem ("Two-Dimensional Transport in a Heterogeneous Aquifer") described in the MT3DMS documentation. The problem consists of a low K zone inside a larger zone. The sides of the region are no flow boundaries. The top and bottom are constant head boundaries that cause the flow to move from the top to the bottom of the region. An injection well with a specified concentration provides the source of the contaminants. A pumping well serves to withdraw contaminated water migrating from the injection well. A steady state flow solution will be computed and a transient transport simulation will be performed over a one year period.

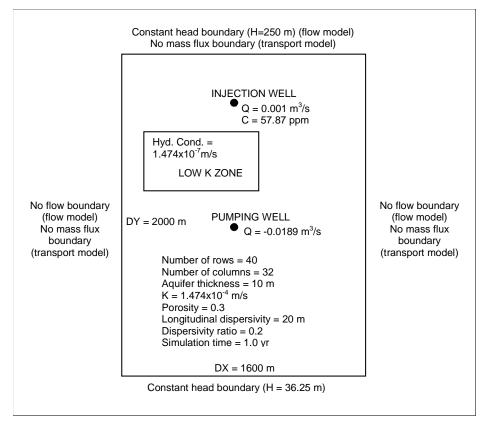


Figure 9.1 Sample Flow and Transport Problem.

9.2 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

9.3 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The *3D Grid* module
- The MODFLOW interface
- The MT3DMS interface

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If you have licensed and enabled each of the listed items on your version of GMS,

you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to obtain an updated password or hardware lock before continuing. The tutorial cannot be completed in demo mode because the ability to save files is required.

9.4 Building the Flow Model

Before setting up the MT3DMS simulation, we must first create a MODFLOW simulation. The resulting MODFLOW solution will then be used as the flow field for the transport simulation.

If you are already familiar with how to create a flow model and would like to skip this section, you can read in a flow model that has already been prepared. Otherwise, continue through section 9.4.

To skip this section and read in a flow model that has already been prepared:

- 1. Select the *Open* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial**mt3dgrid**sample*.
- 3. Select the file entitled *flowmod.mfs*.
- 4. Choose the *Open* button.
- 5. Switch to the *3D Grid* module **.**
- 6. Skip ahead to section 9.5.

9.4.1 Creating the Grid

The first step in setting up the flow simulation is to create the grid. To create the grid:

- 1. Switch to the 3D Grid module \blacksquare .
- 2. Select the Create Grid command from the Grid menu.
- 3. In the section entitled *X*-dimension, enter 1600.0 for the *Length* value, and 32 for the *Number Cells* value.
- 4. In the section entitled *Y*-dimension, enter 2000.0 for the *Length* value, and 40 for the *Number Cells* value.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

A grid should appear in the Graphics Window.

9.4.2 Initializing the MODFLOW Simulation

To initialize a new MODFLOW simulation:

Select the New Simulation command in the MODFLOW menu.

9.4.3 The Basic Package

The next step in setting up the MODFLOW simulation is to initialize the data in the *Basic* package.

Headings

First, we will enter the headings and other basic information.

- 1. Select the *Basic Package* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. For the first line of the heading, enter: "GMS MT3DMS Tutorial MODFLOW Simulation".
- 3. For the second line of the heading, enter your name and the current date.

Units

Next, we will define the model units.

- 1. Select the Units button.
- 2. Select *m* for the *Length* unit.
- 3. Select *d* for the *Time* unit.
- 4. Select kg for the Mass unit.
- 5. Select *ppm* for the *Concentration* unit.
- 6. Select the OK button.

Package Selection

Next, we will select the packages we wish to use.

- 1. Select the *Packages* button.
- 2. Turn on the *Well* package.

- 3. In the Solver section, select the Strongly Impl. Proc. (SIP1) option.
- 4. Select the OK button to exit the Packages dialog.

The IBOUND Array

The next step is to set up the IBOUND array. The IBOUND array is used to designate each cell as either active (IBOUND>0), inactive (IBOUND=0), or constant head (IBOUND<0). For our problem, all cells will be active, except for the top and bottom rows, which will be designated as constant head. The default value for the IBOUND array is active, thus, all we need to do is change the IBOUND value for the top and bottom rows to a value less than zero (-1). This could be accomplished with the IBOUND array editor that is accessed through the IBOUND button, but in this case, it is easier to select the cells in the *Graphics Window* and assign a value using the *Cell Attributes* dialog.

- 1. Select the *Close* button to exit the *Basic Package* dialog.
- 2. Choose the *Select i* tool **(D)** in the *Tool Palette*.
- 3. Click anywhere in the top row to select it.
- 4. While holding down the *Shift* key, click anywhere in the bottom row.
- 5. Select the *Cell Attributes* command in the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 6. Enter a value of -1 for the *IBOUND* value.
- 7. Select the OK button.
- 8. Click outside the grid to unselect the cells.

The Starting Head Array

The next step is to set up the Starting Heads array. The Starting Heads array is used to establish an initial head value that MODFLOW will modify in an iterative fashion until the solution converges. Based on the boundary conditions for our problem, it is reasonable to expect that the heads will range from 36.25 m to 250 m. We will assign a constant value for the starting head that is an average of these values.

- 1. Select the Basic Package command from the MODFLOW menu.
- 2. Select the *Starting Heads* button.
- 3. Select the *Constant -> Grid* button.

- 4. Make sure the *Apply to variable head cells only* option is selected and select the *OK* button.
- 5. Enter a value of 145.0.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.
- 7. Select the OK button to exit the Starting Heads Array dialog.

Constant Head Cells

The starting head array is also used in conjunction with the IBOUND array to define constant head cells. The negative value in the IBOUND array for a cell marks the cell as a constant head cell but the head associated with the cell is entered in the Starting head array. Thus, we must enter the constant head values for the top and bottom rows in the starting head array. First, we will enter the head values along the bottom row of the grid. The easiest way to assign these values is by selecting the cells directly in the *Graphics Window*.

- 1. Select the *Close* button to exit the *Basic Package* dialog.
- 2. With the *Select i* tool still active, click anywhere in the top row to select it.
- 3. Select the *Cell Attributes* command in the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 4. Enter a value of 250 for the *Starting Head* value.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.
- 6. Repeat steps 2-5 to assign a value of 36.25 to the bottom row.

This concludes the input for the *Basic* package.

9.4.4 The BCF Package

The next step in setting up the model is to enter the data for the block-centered flow (BCF) package.

- 1. Select the *BCF Package* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. In the Layer Type section, choose the Confined option.

The buttons in the lower right portion of the dialog are for entering layer data. First, we will enter the top and bottom elevations. We will use a constant elevation throughout the grid. The bottom elevation is zero and top elevation is ten meters. This happens to be the default values assigned to a new grid. Thus, in this case, we don't need to make any changes to the elevations. The next value to assign is the horizontal hydraulic conductivity (k). For our problem, the grid will have one k value except for one region, which will have a lower value. To enter the k values, we will first assign a global k value and then select the cells in the low k region and assign the values directly. To assign the global k value:

- 1. Select the Horizontal Hyd. Conductivity button.
- 2. Select the *Constant to Grid* button.
- 3. Enter a value of 12.7 (note:1.474e-3 m/s X 3600 s/hr X 24 hr/d = 12.7 m/d).
- 4. Select the OK and Close buttons repeatedly to exit all dialogs.

Now we will select the cells in the low K zone to assign a lower value of K_h . The low K zone extends from x=200 to x=900 in the horizontal direction and from y=1100 to y=1500 in the vertical direction. This corresponds to a rectangular region with the cell (11,5) in the upper left corner and the cell (18,18) in the lower right corner. To select the zone:

- 1. Select the *Select Cells* tool
- 2. While examining the ijk display fields in the *Edit Window*, select the cell with I=11 and J=5.
- 3. While holding down the *Shift* key, select the cell with I=18 and J=18.
- 4. Keep holding down the *Shift* key and drag a rectangle that just encloses the two cells you just selected.

To assign the k value:

- 1. Select the *Cell Attributes* command in the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Enter a value of 0.0127 in the *Horizontal Hyd. Conductivity* edit field (note: 1.474e-7m/s X 3600s/hr X 24hr/d = 0.0127m/d).
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

9.4.5 Defining the Wells

Finally, we will enter the data for the injection well and the pumping well. First, we will create the injection well. The well is located at the cell (10,16).

- 1. Locate the cell in I=10 and J=16 and select it by clicking in the cell.
- 2. Select the *Point Sources/Sinks* command in the *MODFLOW* menu.

- 3. In the *Well* section, select the *Add* button.
- 4. Enter a value of 86.4 for the flow rate (note: $0.001 \text{ m}^3/\text{s} \times 3600 \text{s/hr} \times 24 \text{hr/d} = 86.4 \text{m}^3/\text{d}$).
- 5. Select the OK button.

Next, we will create the pumping well. The well is located at the cell (24,16).

- 1. Locate the cell with I=24 and J=16 and select it.
- 2. Select the *Point Sources/Sinks* command in the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 6. In the Well section, select the Add button.
- 3. Enter a value of -1633.0 for the flow rate (note: $0.0189m^3/s \times 3600s/hr \times 24hr/d = 1633.0m^3/d$).
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

9.4.6 Saving the Simulation

We are now ready to save the simulation and run MODFLOW.

- 1. Select the *Save As* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. In the *Save* dialog, locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial**mt3dgrid*.
- 3. Enter *flow.mfs* for the file name.
- 4. Select the *Save* button.

9.4.7 Running MODFLOW

To run MODFLOW:

- 1. Select the Run MODFLOW command from the MODFLOW menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt.
- 3. When the simulation is finished, close the window and return to GMS.

9.4.8 Viewing the Flow Solution

Next, we will read in the computed head values for the flow model.

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* button.

9.5 Building the Transport Model

Now that the flow solution has been computed, we are ready to set up the MT3DMS transport simulation. Like MODFLOW, MT3DMS is structured in a modular fashion and uses a series of packages as input. Consequently, the GMS interface to MT3DMS is similar to the interface to MODFLOW and we will follow a similar sequence of steps to enter the input data.

9.5.1 Initializing the Simulation

First, we will initialize the MT3DMS simulation.

Select the New Simulation command from the MT3D menu.

9.5.2 The Basic Transport Package

The MT3DMS Basic Transport package is similar to a combination of the MODFLOW Basic and *BCF* packages. It is always required and it defines basic information such as stress periods, active/inactive regions, and starting concentration values.

Select the Basic Transport Package command from the MT3D menu.

Headings

To enter the headings:

- 1. For the first line of the heading, enter: "GMS MT3DMS Tutorial MT3DMS Simulation".
- 2. For the second line of the heading, enter your name and the current date.

Species

Since MT3DMS is a multi-species model, we need to define the number of species and name each species. We will use one species named "tracer."

- 1. Select the *Define Species* button.
- 2. Select the *New* button.

- 3. Change the name of the species to *tracer*.
- 4. Select the OK button to return to the Basic Transport Package dialog.

Packages

Next, we will select which packages we wish to use.

- 1. Select the *Packages* button.
- 2. Select the *Advection Package* option.
- 3. Select the Dispersion Package option.
- 4. Select the Source/Sink Mixing Package option.
- 5. Select the OK button to exit the Packages dialog.

Stress Periods

The next step is to set up the stress periods. The flow simulation was steady state but the transport simulation will be transient. We will run the simulation for a one year time period. To do this we will use a single stress period (since the input values are constant) and allow MT3DMS to determine the appropriate transport step size.

- 1. Select the *Stress Periods* button.
- 2. Change the *Length* field to 365.
- 3. Make sure the value in the *Transport step size* is zero. A value of zero signifies that MT3DMS will automatically compute the appropriate transport step size.
- 4. Select the OK button to exit the Stress Periods dialog.

Output Control

Next, we will specify the output options.

- 1. Select the Output Control button.
- 2. Select the *Print or save at specified interval* option.
- 3. Change the specified interval to 10. This will output a solution at every tenth transport step.
- 4. Select the OK button to exit the Output Control dialog.

ICBUND Array

The ICBUND array is similar to the IBOUND array in MODFLOW. The ICBUND array is used to designate active transport cells (ICBUND>0), inactive transport cells (ICBUND=0), and constant concentration cells (ICBUND<0). In most problems, ICBUND will be similar to IBOUND but it will differ. Typically, the cells which are constant head cells in the flow solution are not constant concentration cells in the transport solution. For our problem, all of the cells are active, therefore, no changes are necessary.

Starting Concentration Array

The starting concentration array defines the initial condition for the contaminant concentration. In our problem, the starting concentrations are all zero and the default is adequate.

HTOP and Thickness Arrays

MT3DMS uses the HTOP array and a thickness array to determine the layer geometry. However, the values for these arrays are determined automatically from the MODFLOW layer data and no input is necessary.

Porosity Array

Finally, we will define the porosity for the cells. Our problem has a constant porosity of 0.3. This is the default value in GMS so no changes need to be made.

This completes the definition of the Basic Transport package data.

Select the *Close* button to exit the *Basic Transport Package* dialog.

9.5.3 The Advection Package

The next step is to enter the data for the Advection package.

- 1. Select the Advection Package command from the MT3D menu.
- 2. For the *Solution scheme*, select the *Third order TVD scheme* (*ULTIMATE*) option.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

9.5.4 The Dispersion Package

Next, we will enter the data for the Dispersion package.

1. Select the *Dispersion Package* command from the *MT3D* menu.

- 2. Select the *Longitudinal Dispersivity* button.
- 3. Select the *Constant -> Grid* option.
- 4. Enter a value of 20.
- 5. Select the OK button.
- 6. Select the OK button to exit the Longitudinal Dispersivity dialog.
- 7. Enter a value of 0.2 for the *Ratio of trans. dispersivity to long. dispersivity* parameter.
- 8. Enter a value of 0.2 for the *Ratio of vert. dispersivity to long. dispersivity* parameter.
- 9. Select the *Close* button to exit the *Dispersion Package* dialog.

9.5.5 The Source/Sink Mixing Package

Finally, we must define the data for the Source/Sink Mixing package. For our problem, we only have one source/sink: the injection well. To define the source at the injection well, we need to select the well and assign a concentration.

- 1. Select the cell containing the injection well (the upper well) by clicking anywhere in the interior of the cell.
- 2. Select the *Point Sources/Sinks* command in the *MT3D* menu.
- 3. Turn on the *Well* option.
- 4. Enter a value of 57.87 for the concentration.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.
- 6. Click outside the grid to unselect the cell.

9.5.6 Saving the Simulation

We are now ready to save the simulation and run MT3DMS.

- 1. Select the *Save As* command from the *MT3D* menu.
- 2. Locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial**mt3dgrid*.
- 3. Enter *trans.mts* for the file name.

4. Select the *Save* button to save the files.

9.5.7 Running MT3DMS

To run MT3DMS:

- 1. Select the *Run MT3DMS* command from the *MT3D* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt.
- 3. When the simulation is finished, close the window and return to GMS.

9.5.8 Reading in the Transport Solution

To read in the transport solution:

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command from the *MT3D* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

9.5.9 Changing the Contouring Options

When displaying plume data, the color fill option often provides excellent results.

- 1. Select the *Contour Options* command in the *Data* menu.
- 2. Turn on the Color fill between contours option.
- 3. Select the OK button.

9.5.10 Setting Up a Film Loop

Finally, we will observe how the solution changes over the one year simulation by generating a film loop animation. To set up the film loop:

- 1. Select the *Film Loop* command in the *Data* menu.
- 2. Select the *Setup* button.
- 3. Turn on the *Display clock* option.
- 4. Select the *Use constant interval* option and change the *Time interval* to 36.5. This will result in 11 frames.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

You should see some images appear on the screen. These are the frames of the film loop which are being generated. When the filmloop is finished generating:

- 1. Select the Run button to begin the animation.
- 2. After viewing the animation, select the *Stop* button to stop the animation.
- 3. Select the *Step* button to move the animation one frame at a time.
- 4. You may wish to experiment with some of the other playback controls. When you are finished, select the *Done* button to exit the *Film Loop* dialog.

9.6 Conclusion

This concludes the MT3DMS – *Grid Approach* tutorial. If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *No* at the prompt.

CHAPTER

10

MT3DMS - Conceptual Model Approach

MT3DMS simulations can be constructed using either the grid approach where data are entered on a cell-by-cell basis or using the conceptual model approach where the data are entered via points, arcs, and polygons. The previous tutorial described how to use the grid approach. This tutorial describes how to use the conceptual model approach.

10.1 Description of Problem

The problem we will be solving for this tutorial is an extension of the problem described in the tutorial entitled MODFLOW - *Conceptual Model Approach*. Thus, if you have not yet completed the MODFLOW tutorial, you may wish to do so now before continuing.

In the MODFLOW tutorial, a site in East Texas was modeled. We will be using the solution from this model as the flow field for the transport simulation. The model included a proposed landfill. For this tutorial, we will be performing two transport simulations to analyze the long term potential for migration of leachate from the landfill. In the first simulation, we will be modeling transport due to advection only. In the second simulation, we will include sorption and decay in addition to advection.

10.2 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

10.3 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The *3D Grid* module
- The *Map* module
- The MT3DMS interface.

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If you have licensed and enabled each of the listed items on your version of GMS, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to obtain an updated password or hardware lock before continuing. The tutorial cannot be completed in demo mode because the ability to save files is required.

10.4 Importing the Project

The first step is to import the East Texas project. This will read in the MODFLOW model and solution, the background image, and all other files associated with the model.

To import the project:

- 1. Select the *Open* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial*\modfmap\sample.
- 3. Select the file entitled *sample.gpr*.
- 4. Choose the *Open* button.

10.5 Initializing the MT3DMS Simulation

Now that the MODFLOW model is in memory, we can initialize the MT3DMS simulation. First, we will initialize the model.

- 1. Switch to the *3D Grid* module
- 2. Select the New Simulation command from the MT3D menu.
- 3. Select the Basic Transport Package command from the MT3D menu.

10.5.1 Defining the Units

First, we will define the units. We will not change the length and time units (these must be consistent with the flow model). However, we need to define units for mass and concentration.

- 1. Select the Units button.
- 2. Select *slug* for the *Mass* units.
- 3. Select *ppm* for the *Concentration* units.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

10.5.2 Defining the Species

Since MT3DMS is a multi-species model, we need to define the number of species and name each species. We will use one species named "leachate."

- 1. Select the *Define Species* button.
- 2. Change the name of the species to *leachate*.
- 3. Select the OK button to return to the Basic Transport Package dialog.

10.5.3 Defining the Stress Periods

Next, we will define the stress periods.

Select the Stress Periods button.

Since the flow solution computed by MODFLOW is steady state, we are free to define any sequence of stress periods and time steps we wish. Since the leachate from the landfill will be released at a constant rate, we only need one stress period. We will enter the length of the stress period (i.e., the length of the simulation) and let MT3DMS compute the appropriate transport time step length by leaving the transport step size at zero.

- 1. Enter 3000.0 for the stress period length (days).
- 2. Enter 2000 for the Max transport steps.
- 3. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Stress Periods* dialog.

10.5.4 Selecting Output Control

By default, MT3DMS outputs a solution at every transport step. Since this results in a rather large output file, we will change the output so that a solution is written every time step (every 300 days).

- 1. Select the Output Control button.
- 2. Select the *Print at specified times* option.
- 3. Select the *Times* button.
- 4. Select the Initialize Values button
- 5. Enter the following values:

Initial time step size: 300 Bias: 1.0 Maximum time step size: 300 Maximum simulation time: 3000

6. Select the *OK* or *Close* buttons three times to return to the *Basic Transport Package* dialog.

10.5.5 Selecting the Packages

Next, we will specify which of the MT3DMS packages we intend to use.

- 1. Select the *Packages* button.
- 2. Select the Advection package, the Dispersion package, and the Source/Sink Mixing package options.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

Note that the *Basic Transport Package* dialog also includes some layer data. We will enter the data for these arrays at a latter point in the tutorial.

Select the *Close* button to exit the *Basic Transport Package* dialog.

10.6 Assigning the Aquifer Properties

MT3DMS requires that a porosity and dispersion coefficient be defined for each of the cells in the grid. While these values can be assigned directly to the cells, it is sometimes convenient to assign the parameters using polygonal zones defined in the conceptual model. The parameters are converted to the grid cells using the *Map* -> *MT3DMS* command.

10.6.1 Assigning the Parameters to the Polygons

To assign the porosities and dispersion coefficients to the polygons:

- 1. Switch to the *Map* Module
- 2. In the *Coverages* combo box at the top of the GMS window, select the *Layer 1* coverage.
- 3. Choose the *Select Polygons* tool **E**.
- 4. Double click on the layer polygon.
- 5. Turn on the Aquifer Porosity option and enter a value of 0.3.
- 6. Turn on the Longitudinal dispersivity option and enter a value 20.
- 7. Select the *OK* button.

To assign the values to layer 2:

- 1. In the *Coverages* combo box at the top of the GMS window, select the *Layer* 2 coverage.
- 2. Double click on the layer polygon.
- 3. Turn on the Aquifer Porosity option and enter a value of 0.4.
- 4. Turn on the *Longitudinal dispersivity* option and enter a value 20.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.
- 6. Click anywhere outside the model to unselect the highlighted polygon.

10.7 Assigning the Recharge Concentration

The purpose of our model is to simulate the transport of contaminants emitted from the landfill. When the flow model was constructed, a separate, reduced value of recharge was assigned to the landfill site. This recharge represents leachate from the landfill. We will assign a concentration to this recharge. The concentration can be assigned directly to the recharge polygon in the conceptual model.

- 1. In the *Coverages* combo box at the top of the GMS window, select the *Recharge* coverage.
- 2. Double click on the landfill polygon.
- 3. For the *Contaminant concentration* in the *Recharge* section at the top right of the dialog, enter a constant value of 20000.0 for the concentration.
- 4. Select the OK button.
- 5. Click anywhere outside the model to unselect the polygon.

10.8 Converting the Conceptual Model

At this point, we are ready to assign the aquifer parameters and the recharge concentration to the cells using the conceptual model.

- 1. Select the *Map -> MT3DMS* command in the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 2. Make sure the "All applicable coverages" option is selected and select *OK* at the prompt.

10.9 Layer Thicknesses

To define the aquifer geometry, MT3DMS requires an HTOP array defining the top elevations of the uppermost aquifer. A thickness array must then be entered for each layer. Since we used the "true layer" approach to build the MODFLOW model, the layer geometry is automatically generated and no further input is necessary.

10.10 The Advection Package

Before running MODFLOW, there are a few more options to enter. First, we need to select a solver for the Advection package.

- 1. Switch to the *3D Grid* module
- 2. Select the Advection Package command from the MT3D menu.
- 3. For the solution scheme, select the *Method of Characteristics (MOC)* option.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

10.11 The Dispersion Package

Next, we will enter the data for the Dispersion package.

Select the Dispersion Package command from the MT3D menu.

The longitudinal dispersivity values were automatically assigned from the conceptual model. All we need to do is specify the remaining three parameters.

- 1. Enter a value of 0.2 for the *Ratio of transverse disp. to long. disp.* parameter.
- 2. Enter a value of 0.2 for the *Ratio of vert. disp. to long. disp.* parameter.
- 3. Ensure that the value of the *Effective molecular diff. coefficient* is zero.
- 4. Select the up arrow at the top of the dialog to switch to layer 2.
- 5. Once again, enter 0.2 for both dispersivity ratios.
- 6. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Dispersion Package* dialog.

10.12 The Source/Sink Mixing Package Dialog

Finally, we must define the data for the source/sink mixing package. However, the only data required in this package for our simulation are the concentrations assigned to the recharge from the landfill. These values were automatically assigned to the appropriate cells from the conceptual model. Thus, the input data for this package are complete.

10.13 Saving the Simulation

We are now finished inputting the MT3DMS data and we are ready to save the model and run the simulation. To save the simulation:

- 1. Select the Save As command from the MT3D menu.
- 2. Locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial**mt3dmap*.
- 3. Enter *run1.mts* for the file name.
- 4. Select the Save button to save the files.

10.14 Running MT3DMS

To run MT3DMS:

- 1. Select the *Run MT3DMS* command from the *MT3D* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt.
- 3. When the simulation is finished, close the window and return to GMS.

10.15 Viewing the Solution

We will now go back to GMS to view the solution computed by MT3DMS.

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command from the *MT3D* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.
- 3. In the TS combo box at the top of the window, select the last time step.

It is often helpful to use the color filled contours option. To do this:

- 1. Select the *Contour Options* command in the *Data* menu.
- 2. Select the *Contour specified range* option.
- 3. Enter 1.0 for the minimum value and 120.0 for the maximum.
- 4. Change the Contour Method to Color fill between contours.
- 5. Select the OK button to exit the Contour Options dialog.

You should now see a display of color shaded contours confined to the area adjacent to the landfill. Note that the leachate eventually reaches both the river and the well. To view the solution for layer two:

Select the down arrow \blacksquare in the mini-grid display.

To view the solution in cross section view:

- 1. Select the up arrow 🕇 in the mini-grid display.
- 2. Select a cell in the vicinity of the landfill.
- 3. Select the *View J Axis* macro
- 4. Use the left and right arrow keys to view the solution along different columns.
- 5. Select the *View K Axis* macro when finished.

10.16 Viewing a Film Loop

Next, we will observe how the solution changes over the course of the simulation by generating a film loop animation. To set up the film loop:

- 1. Select the *Film Loop* command in the *Data* menu.
- 2. Select the *Setup* button.
- 3. Turn on the *Display clock* option.
- 4. Select the Use constant interval option.
- 5. Enter a value of 300.0 for the *Time interval*.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.

You should see some images appear on the screen. These are the frames of the film loop which are being generated. Once they are all generated you can play them back at a high speed.

When the hourglass cursor disappears:

1. Select the *Play* button to begin the animation.

- 2. After viewing the animation, select the *Stop* button to stop the animation.
- 3. Select the *Step* button to move the animation one frame at a time.
- 4. You may wish to experiment with some of the other playback controls. When you are finished, select the *Done* button to exit the *Film Loop* dialog.

10.17 Modeling Sorption and Decay

The solution we have just computed can be thought of as a worst case scenario since we have neglected sorption and decay. Sorption will retard the movement of the plume and decay (due to biodegradation) will reduce the concentration. For the second part of the tutorial we will modify the model so that sorption and decay are simulated. We will then compare this solution with the first solution.

10.17.1 Turning on the Chemical Reactions Package

Sorption and decay are simulated in the *Chemical Reactions Package*. We need to turn this package on before it can be used.

- 1. Select the Basic Transport Package command in the MT3D menu.
- 2. Select the *Packages* command.
- 3. Turn on the *Chemical reaction package* option.
- 4. Select the OK button to exit the Packages dialog.
- 5. Select the *Close* button to exit the *Basic Transport Package* dialog.

10.17.2 Entering the Sorption and Biodegradation Data

Next, we will enter the sorption and biodegradation data in the *Chemical Reactions Package* dialog.

- 1. Select the *Chemical Reaction Package* command in the *MT3D* menu.
- 2. In the *Sorption* section, select the *Linear isotherm* option.
- 3. In the *Kinetic rate reaction* section, select the *First-order irreversible kinetic reaction* option.

4. In the lower part of the dialog, enter the following values:

Bulk density	104.0	
1st sorption constant	0.003	
1st order rate constant, dissolved phase	0.0001	
1st order rate constant, sorbed phase	0.0001	

5. In both the middle and the bottom portion of the dialog, switch the layer to layer 2 and enter the following values:

Bulk density	100.0
1st sorption constant	0.003
1st order rate constant, dissolved phase	0.00005
1st order rate constant, sorbed phase	0.00005

6. Select the *OK* button to exit the dialog.

10.18 Saving the Simulation

We are now ready to save the new simulation.

- 1. Select the Save As command in the MT3D menu.
- 2. Enter *run2.mts* for the file name.
- 3. Select the *Save* button.

10.19 Running MT3DMS

Using the same steps you followed above, execute MT3DMS and compute a solution with the *run2.mts* super file.

10.20 Viewing the Solution

To view the results from the second simulation:

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command from the *MT3D* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.
- 3. In the TS combo box at the top of the window, select the last time step.

Notice that at the end of the simulation the plume is smaller and less advanced than in the first simulation.

10.21 Generating a Time History Plot

A useful way to compare two transient solutions is to create an observation point and generate a time history plot.

10.21.1 Creating an Observation Coverage

The first step in generating a time history plot is to create an observation coverage in the Map module.

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module +
- 2. Select the Coverages command in the Feature Objects menu.
- 3. Select the *New* button.
- 4. Enter "Obs. Pts." for the name of the coverage.
- 5. Change the type of the coverage to *Observation*.
- 6. Click on the *Options* button.
- 7. Select the *New* button.
- 8. Change the name to "concentration".
- 9. Select the OK button to exit the Observation Coverage Options dialog.
- 10. Select the OK button to exit the Coverages dialog.

10.21.2 Creating an Observation Point

Next, we will create an observation point.

- 1. Select the *Create Point* tool
- 2. While monitoring the cursor coordinates in the *Edit Window*, move the cursor to where the coordinates are approximately equal to (9365.0, 3650.0) and click once to create an observation point.
- 3. With the point still selected, select the *Attributes* command from the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 4. Select the Assign to specified layer option and select layer 2.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

10.21.3 Creating a Time Series Plot

Next, we will create a time series plot:

- 1. Make sure the point you just created is still selected.
- 2. Select the *Obs. Plot Options* command in the *Display* menu.
- 3. Select the *New* button.
- 4. In the *Plot type* pull-down list, select the *Time series* option.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

Finally, to display the plot we must open the *Plot Window*.

- 1. Select the Show Plot Window command in the Display menu.
- 2. Select the *Frame* macro

10.21.4 Plotting Multiple Curves

By default, only the active data set is used to generate the time series plot. In many cases it is useful to plot the results from two simulations at once. To plot a curve for both solutions:

- 1. Select the Obs. Plot Options command in the Display menu.
- 2. Select the *Options* button.
- 3. Select the Use selected data set option.
- 4. Highlight the data set entitled leachate, the one turned off.
- 5. Select the *Display* toggle.
- 6. Select the OK button to exit the Time Series Plot Options dialog.
- 7. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Observation Plot Options* dialog.

10.21.5 Moving the Observation Point

Once an observation point is created, it can be moved to a new location on the grid and the plot is automatically regenerated.

1. Select the *Select Points/Nodes* tool \frown .

2. Drag the point to a new location.

10.22 Conclusion

This concludes the MT3DMS – *Conceptual Model Approach* tutorial. If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *No* at the prompt.

CHAPTER SEAM3D

SEAM3D is a reactive transport model used to simulate complex biodegradation problems involving multiple substrates and multiple electron acceptors. It is based on the MT3DMS code. In addition to the regular MT3DMS modules, SEAM3D includes a *Biodegration* package and *NAPL Dissolution* package. This tutorial illustrates how to use both of these packages to set up a reactive transport simulation.

11.1 Description of Problem

The problem we will be solving in this tutorial is illustrated in Figure 11.1. The site represents a shallow unconfined aquifer with a uniform flow field from left to right. A NAPL plume is located on the left side of the model. The NAPL plume contains two primary hydrocarbons, benzene and toluene. The benzene and toluene are dissolving into the ground water and are being transported to the right.

We will set up a SEAM3D simulation that models the transport and sequential degradation of the contaminants via aerobic degradation and sulfate reduction over a 2000 day period. The model will include dispersion and retardation due to sorption. The reactions will be modeled using the *Biodegradation* package. The gradual release of contaminants from the NAPL plume will be modeled as a source term using the *NAPL Dissolution* package. For comparison purposes, the model will include a conservative (no sorption) and a non-conservative tracer.

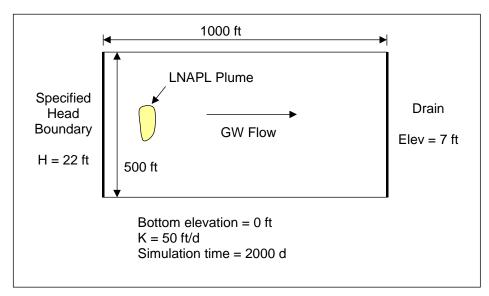


Figure 11.1 Problem to be Solved in SEAM3D Tutorial.

11.2 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

11.3 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The *3D Grid* module
- The *Map* module
- The SEAM3D interface.

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If you have licensed and enabled each of the listed items on your version of GMS, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to obtain an updated password or hardware lock before continuing. The tutorial cannot be completed in demo mode because the ability to save files is required.

11.4 Importing the Flow Model

The first step in setting up the SEAM3D simulation is to import the MODFLOW flow model. A steady state flow model has been previously computed and is supplied with the tutorial files.

- 1. Switch to the *3D Grid Module*
- 2. Select the *Read Simulation* command in the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 3. In the *Open* dialog, locate and open the file entitled *tutorial**seam3d**flowmod.mfs*

At this point, you should see a grid appear. To view the flow solution:

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command in the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt.

A set of head contours should appear indicating a uniform flow field from left side to the right side.

11.5 Initializing the SEAM3D Simulation

Before entering the SEAM3D data, we must first initialize the SEAM3D simulation. This allocates the memory and data structures used by GMS to set up a SEAM3D simulation. To initialize the simulation.

Select the New Simulation command from the MT3D menu.

The interface to MT3DMS, RT3D, and SEAM3D are all contained in the *MT3D* menu. Now that we have initialized the simulation, most of the menu commands in the *MT3D* menu are undimmed.

11.6 Basic Transport Package

The next step is to enter the data required by the *Basic Transport (BTN)* package. The *BTN* package is used to set up the basic components of the simulation, including package selection, stress periods, and initial conditions.

- 1. Select the *Basic Transport Package* command from the *MT3D* menu.
- 2. In the *Model* section of the dialog select the SEAM3D option.

11.6.1 Defining the Units

First of all, we will define the units. The length and time units will already be set by the MODFLOW model. We will specify the mass and concentration units.

- 1. Select the *Units* button.
- 2. Check to ensure that the length units are feet (ft) and the time units are days (d).
- 3. Change the mass units to milligrams (mg).
- 4. Change the concentration units to milligrams per liter (mg/l).
- 5. Select the *OK* button to exit the Units dialog.

The units we have entered are for convenience only and do not affect the calculations. GMS displays these units next to the input fields to remind us of the proper units for each item. It is still up to the user to enter consistent units.

11.6.2 Setting up the Stress Periods

The next step is to set up the stress periods. Since none of the sources change over the simulation, we can use a single stress period with a single time step of 2000 days. For the transport step size, we will use the default value of zero. This forces SEAM3D to compute the appropriate transport step size automatically.

- 1. Select the *Stress Periods* button.
- 2. Change the length of the stress period to 2000.
- 3. Select the OK button to exit the Stress Periods dialog.

11.6.3 Package Selection

Next, we will select the packages we will be using in the simulation.

- 1. Select the *Packages* button in the *Basic Transport Package* dialog.
- 2. Select the following packages:

Advection Package Dispersion Package Source/Sink Mixing Package Chemical Reaction Package Biodegradation Package NAPL Dissolution Package.

3. Select the OK button to exit the Packages dialog

11.6.4 Defining the Species

Next, we will define the species used in the simulation.

- 1. Select the *Define Species* button.
- 2. Change the number of *Nondegradable Tracers* to 2.
- 3. Change the number of *Hydrocarbon Substrates* to 2.
- 4. In the *Microbial Processes* section of the dialog turn on the *SO4 reduction* option.
- 5. In the *Products to track* section of the dialog turn on the *H2S* option.

Notice that as we make changes in the left side of the dialog, the species names are listed on the right side of the dialog. Some of these names are fixed, but some are user defined. We will supply more meaningful names to the tracers and hydrocarbons.

- 1. In the *Names* list, select the *Tracer1* item and change the name to "Tracer (Conservative)."
- 2. Select the *Tracer2* item and change the name to "Tracer (Non-Conservative)."
- 3. Select the *Substrate1* item and change the name to "Benzene."
- 4. Select the *Substrate2* item and change the name to "Toluene."
- 5. Select the OK button to exit the Define Species dialog.

11.6.5 Output Control

We will now edit the *Output Control* data to specify how frequently the solution data should be saved for post-processing. We will save once every 100 days for a total of 20 data sets over the 2000 day simulation.

- 1. Select the *Output Control* button.
- 2. Select the *Print at specified times* option.
- 3. Select the *Times* button.

- 4. Select the Initialize Values button.
- 5. Enter 100 for the *Initial time step size*.
- 6. Enter 100 for the *Maximum time step size*.
- 7. Enter 2000 for the Maximum simulation time.
- 8. Select the OK button to exit the Initialize Time Steps dialog.
- 9. Select the OK button to exit the Variable Time Steps dialog
- 10. Select the OK button to exit the Output Control dialog

11.6.6 Entering the Porosity

SEAM3D requires a porosity value for each cell in order to compute a correct seepage velocity for transport. We will use a constant porosity for the entire grid. To enter the porosity:

- 1. Select the *Porosity* button.
- 2. Select the *Constant -> Grid* button.
- 3. Enter a value of 0.25 and select OK.
- 4. Select the OK button to exit the Porosity dialog

11.6.7 Starting Concentrations

The mobile species are listed in the lower right corner of the *BTN Package* dialog. We must define a set of starting concentrations for each of the species. The default concentration is zero. This will be the correct starting concentration for the hydrocarbon substrates and the tracers. However, we must set the starting concentrations of the O2, SO4, and H2S to the correct background values.

- 1. Select *O2* in the list and select the *Starting Concentration* button.
- 2. Select the *Constant -> Grid* button.
- 3. Enter a value of 4.0 (mg/L) and select the OK button.
- 4. Select the OK button to exit the Starting Concentration dialog.
- 5. Repeat this process to enter the following starting concentrations:

S04 = 9.0 mg/L

H2S = 0.01 mg/L

This concludes the input for the BTN pacakge.

Select the Close button to exit the Basic Transport Package dialog.

11.7 Advection Package

Typically, the next step at this point would be to enter the data for the Advection package. However, the default solution scheme (*Third Order TVD* – *ULTIMATE*) is adequate for this problem and no changes need to be made.

11.8 Dispersion Package

Next, we will enter the data for the *Dispersion* package. The aquifer has a longitudinal dispersivity of 10.0 ft and a transverse (horizontal) dispersivity of 0.5 ft. The vertical dispersivity is assumed equal to the longitudinal dispersivity.

- 1. Select the *Dispersion Package* command in the *MT3D* menu.
- 2. Select the Longitudinal Dispersivity button.
- 3. Select the *Constant -> Grid* button.
- 4. Enter a value of 10.0 and select OK.
- 5. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Longitudinal Dispersivity* dialog.
- 6. Enter a value of 0.05 for the *Ratio of the trans. dispersivity to long. dispersivity* value.
- 7. Select the Close button to exit the Dispersion Package dialog

11.9 Source/Sink Mixing Package

The next step is to enter the data for the *Source/Sink Mixing* package. This package is used to establish the concentration of water entering the system. For our problem, we have water entering the system on the left side of the model through the specified head boundary. We will enter the correct "background" concentrations for fresh water entering through this boundary.

1. Select the *Select j* tool

- 2. Select the leftmost column of cells.
- 3. Select the Point Sources/Sinks command from the MT3D menu.
- 4. Turn on the Constant head option.

Once again, the default value is zero. That is the correct value for most of the species. We will change the value for O2, SO4, and H2S.

- 1. Select O2 from the text window containing the species names.
- 2. Enter a value of 4.0 in the *Constant* edit field.
- 3. Repeat this process to enter the following concentrations:

S04 = 9.0 mg/L

H2S = 0.01 mg/L

4. Select the OK button to exit the Point Sources/Sinks dialog.

11.10 Chemical Reaction Package

Next, we will enter the data for the *Chemical Reaction* package. This package is the standard MT3DMS package that is used to simulate sorption and first order decay. The biodegradation reactions are simulated in the *Biodegradation* package that is unique to SEAM3D. We will use the *Chemical Reaction* package to simulation retardation due to sorption.

- 1. Select the Chemical Reaction Package command in the MT3D menu.
- 2. In the *Sorption* combo box, select the *Linear isotherm* option.
- 3. Enter a value of 5.0e7 for the *Bulk density*.

The default sorption constant is zero. This is the correct value for the conservative tracer and for O2, SO4, and H2S. We will enter a non-zero value for the non-conservative tracer and for the two substrates.

- 1. Select Tracer (Non-Conservative) from the list.
- 2. Enter a value of 5.0e-9 for the 1st sorption constant.
- 3. Repeat steps 1-2 to enter the same value (5.0e-9) for *Benzene* and *Toluene*.
- 4. Select *OK* to exit the *Chemical Reaction Package* dialog.

11.11 NAPL Dissolution Package

We are now ready to enter the data for the *NAPL Dissolution* package. For our problem we must simulate the gradual dissolution of contaminants from a plume into the groundwater. In MT3DMS, such a situation could be simulated using constant concentration cells, injection wells, or recharge. None of these options results in a realistic simulation of dissolution from a plume. The SEAM3D *NAPL Dissolution* package provides a more realistic representation of a contaminant plume. With this package, we identify the cells containing the plume and enter the initial concentration and dissolution rate for the contaminants. We also enter the initial mass fraction and solubility of each species in the plume. SEAM3D then simulates the release of the each of the species over duration of the simulation.

11.11.1 Selecting the Cells

The first step is to select the cells where the plume is located.

- 1. Select the *Select Cells* tool
- 2. Select the *Find Cell* command from the *Grid* menu.
- 3. Enter 9, 6, and 1 for the I, J, K value respectively and select OK.
- 4. Drag a rectangle to select a 4X2 rectangular region of cells as shown in Figure 11.2. The currently selected cell represents the cell in the upper left corner of the grid of cells.

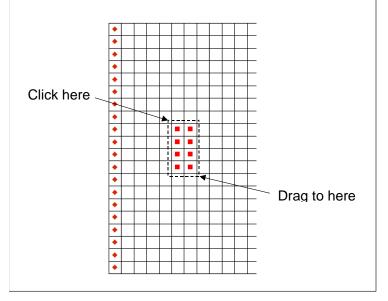


Figure 11.2 Selecting the Cells Defining the Plume.

11.11.2 Assigning the Concentration

Now that the plume cells are selected. The next step is to assign the concentrations to the cells.

- 1. Select the *Point Sources/Sinks* command from the *MT3D* menu.
- 2. Select the *NAPL* option at the bottom of the dialog.
- 3. Enter a value of 2000 for the *Initial concentration*.
- 4. Enter a value of 3.0 for the *Dissolution rate*.
- 5. Select the OK button to exit the Point Sources/Sinks dialog.
- 6. Click anywhere outside the grid to unselect the cells.

11.11.3 Entering the NAPL Data

Finally, we will enter the remaining NAPL plume data using the *NAPL Dissolution Package* dialog.

- 1. Select the NAPL Dissolution Package command from the MT3D menu.
- 2. Change the *Number of tracers in NAPL* value to 2.
- 3. Change the *Number of hydrocarbons in NAPL* value to 2.
- 4. At the bottom of the dialog, enter 150 for the *Inert fraction molecular weight*.
- 5. Select the first item in the list on the left.
- 6. Enter 0.1 for the Initial mass fraction.
- 7. Enter 4400.0 for the *Solubility*.
- 8. Enter 110.0 for the *Molecular weight*.
- 9. Select each of the other three species and enter the same set of values (0.1, 4400, 110).
- 10. Select OK to exit the NAPL Dissolution Package dialog.

11.12 Biodegradation Package

The last package to set up is the *Biodegradation* package. We will enter the yield coefficients, inhibition coefficients, and other reaction parameters controlling the degradation of benzene and toluene.

Select the *Biodegradation Package* command from the *MT3D* menu.

11.12.1 Minimum Concentrations

Notice that the input for the dialog is broken up into a series of property sheets. First, we will enter the data for the minimum concentrations section.

- 1. Select the Min. Conc. tab.
- 2. Enter 2 for the Number of bio steps per transport step.
- 3. Enter 0.001 for the Microcolony minimum concentration.
- 4. Select *Benzene* from the text window and enter 0.01 for the *Minimum concentration*.
- 5. Select *Toluene* from the text window and enter 0.05 for the *Minimum concentration*.
- 6. Select *O2* from the text window and enter 0.1 for the *Minimum* concentration.
- 7. Select *SO4* from the text window and enter 0.2 for the *Minimum concentration*.

11.12.2 Electron Acceptor Coefficients

Next, we will enter the electron acceptor data.

- 1. Select the *El. Acc.* tab in the dialog.
- 2. Enter 0.5 for the *Inihibition coefficient* for SO4-O2.
- 3. Select each item in the lower text window and enter the following values for the *Yield coefficient*:

O2-Benzene: 0.5 O2-Toluene: 0.4 SO4-Benzene: 0.15 SO4-Toluene: 0.1

11.12.3 Generation Coefficients

To enter the generation coefficient for H2S:

- 1. Select the Gen. Coeffs. tab.
- 2. Enter 0.15 in the *Production generation coeff* edit field.

11.12.4 Use Coefficients

To enter the electron acceptor use coefficients:

- 1. Select the Use Coeffs. tab in the dialog.
- 2. Select each item in the list at the upper left and enter the following values for the *Elec. acceptor use coeff.*:

O2-Benzene: 3.0 O2-Toluene: 3.2 SO4-Benzene: 8.0 SO4-Toluene: 8.2

11.12.5 Saturation Constants

To enter the saturation constants:

- 1. Select the Sat. Const. tab.
- 2. Select each item in the first list and enter the following values for the *Hydro. half sat. const.*:

O2-Benzene: 1.0 O2-Toluene: 2.0 SO4-Benzene: 1.0 SO4-Toluene: 2.0

3. Select each item in the second list and enter the following values for the *Elec. acc. half sat. const.*:

O2: 0.1 SO4: 0.5

11.12.6 Rates

To enter the rate data:

- 1. Select the *Rates* tab.
- 2. Make sure that in the *Death Rate* portion of the dialog that the *Calculated by model* option is selected.
- 3. Select each item in the second list and enter the following values for the *Max. specific rate of substrate utilization*:

O2-Benzene: 0.5 O2-Toluene: 0.05 SO4-Benzene: 0.005 SO4-Toluene: 0.0

11.12.7 Starting Concentrations

At this point, the only remaining data for the Biodegradation package are the starting concentrations for the microcolonies. However, the default value of zero is correct. Thus, we are finished with this package.

Select the OK button to exit the Biodegradation Package dialog.

11.13 Saving and Running the Simulation

At this point, we are ready to save the model and run SEAM3D.

- 1. Select the *Save As* command from the *MT3D* menu.
- 2. In the *Save File* dialog, locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial*\seam3d.
- 3. Enter *run1* for the filename.
- 4. Select the Save button to save the files.

To run SEAM3D:

- 1. Select the *Run* SEAM3D command from the *MT3D* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt.
- 3. When the simulation is finished, return to GMS.

11.14 Reading the Solution

Now we will read in the solution for post-processing.

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command from the *MT3D* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt.

11.15 Setting the Contouring Options

We will now turn on color shaded contours and set up a color legend.

- 1. Select the Contour Options command in the Data menu.
- 2. Turn on the Color fill between contours option.
- 3. Select the *Color Ramp Options* button.
- 4. Turn on the Show color legend option.
- 5. Select the *OK* button twice to exit both dialogs.

11.16 Viewing the Concentration Contours

First, we will view the conservative tracer solution at 2000 days.

- 1. Select the *Tracer* (*Conservative*) data set in the *Data Set* combo box at the top of the GMS window.
- 2. Select the time step at t=2000 days from the *TS* combo box at the top of the GMS window.

This plot illustrates the concentration contours corresponding to no sorption and no reactions. This is a useful benchmark to consider when viewing the other solutions. To quickly switch between solutions, we will use a shortcut.

- 1. Click once and then click again on the *Data Set* combo box to highlight it.
- 2. Select the down (\downarrow) arrow key on the keyboard to switch to the next lower solution in the list

Note that once the edit field is highlighted, you can use both the up and down arrow keys to quickly switch solutions. The *Home* key takes you to the first data set in the list and the *End* key takes you to the last data set in the list.

This plot (non-conservative tracer) represents sorption but no reactions.

Use the down (\downarrow) arrow key to view the other solutions.

As you view the solutions, note the relationship between the substrates and the electron acceptors. You may wish to use the *TS* combo box to view the solution at different time steps

11.17 Setting up a Time Series Plot

Another highly effective tool for viewing SEAM3D solutions is a time series plot. A time series plot is used to display the variation of concentration vs. time for one or more species at a particular point in the model. Time series plots are set up using an observation coverage in the *Map* module.

First, we will define an observation coverage.

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module \ddagger .
- 2. Select the Coverages command in the Feature Objects menu.
- 3. In the Coverage Type section, select the Observation option.
- 4. Select the *Options* button.
- 5. Select the *New* button.
- 6. Change the name to "concentration".
- 7. Select the OK button to exit the Observation Coverage Options dialog.
- 8. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Coverages* dialog.

Next, we will create an observation point.

- 1. Select the *Create Point* tool **.
- 2. Click on a point somewhere in the grid downgradient of the NAPL source.

The final step is to create a time series plot.

- 1. With the point still selected, select the *Obs. Plot Options* command in the *Display* menu.
- 2. Select the *New* button to create a new plot.

- 3. Change the type of the plot to *Time series*.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.
- 5. Select the Show Plot Window command in the Display menu.

11.17.1 Moving the Observation Point

At this point, you should see a plot of the active data set vs. time. The plot can easily be changed to display the variation in the data set at a different location.

- 1. Select the *Select Points/Nodes* tool
- 2. Click on the observation point and drag it to a new location (Note: you may need to reposition or resize the *Plot Window* to see the observation point).

11.17.2 Plotting Multiple Data Sets

By default, only the active data set is plotted. For SEAM3D solutions, it is often useful to include multiple species in the plot. This can be accomplished as follows:

- 1. Select the Obs. Plot Options command in the Display menu.
- 2. Select the Options button.
- 3. Select the Use selected data set option.
- 4. In the list of data sets, select both tracers and both substrates and turn on the *Display* toggle for each.
- 5. Select the OK button to exit the Time Series Plot Options dialog.
- 6. Turn on the *Curve legend* option (this will help us distinguish which data set goes with which curve).
- 7. Select the OK button to exit the Observation Plot Options dialog.

Once again, note that you can move the point anywhere in the grid and the plot is updated.

11.18 Other Viewing Options

At this point, you may wish to experiment with other viewing options. For example, you may also wish to set up a film loop animation using the *Film Loop* command in the *Data* menu.

11.19 Conclusion

This concludes the SEAM3D tutorial. If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *No* at the prompt.

CHAPTER

Defining Layer Data

For sites with complex stratigraphy and three-dimensional flow, a multi-layer MODFLOW model can be much more accurate than a one layer, twodimensional model. When creating multi-layer models, defining layer data can be challenging. This is particularly true for cases involving embedded seams, pinchouts, and truncations. Fortunately, GMS contains a suite of tools for interpolating and manipulating layer elevation data. With these tools, even complex geologic strata can be modeled quickly and easily. This tutorial describes how to use these tools most effectively.

12.1 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

12.2 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial can be completed in either demo mode or normal model. If you are already in demo mode, you may continue with the tutorial. If you are in normal mode, you will need to ensure that the necessary components have been licensed. This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

• The *Map* module +

- The 2D Scatter Point module
- The *3D Grid* module 🔀.

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If each of these items is enabled, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to switch to demo mode before continuing. To switch to demo mode:

- 1. Select the *Demo Mode* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompts.

12.3 Using the "True Layer" Mode

For a multi-layer MODFLOW model, the layer data required by each layer depend on the layer type. For example, an unconfined layer requires an array of bottom elevations and an array of hydraulic conductivity (K) values. A confined layer requires a transmissivity array. A hybrid layer requires top elevation, bottom elevation, and K. For all but the bottom layer, an array of leakance values is required. Further, if the model is transient, one or two arrays or storage coefficients are required.

Many of the layer arrays (transmissivity, leakance, and confined storage coefficient) are a function of the layer geometry. Setting up such arrays for input can be quite tedious. However, GMS provides a way to automate these calculations. The layer data can be entered in one of two modes: the direct approach where the user directly enters the arrays described above or the "true layer" method. With the true layer method, the user provides the top and bottom elevation of each layer and the horizontal and vertical hydraulic conductivity and all required arrays are computed by GMS as the MODFLOW input files are written out to disk prior to running MODFLOW. This is the default method used by GMS and all examples described in this tutorial are based on this approach. Using the true layer method also makes it possible to view the stratigraphy when in side view.

12.4 Interpolating to MODFLOW Layers

With the true layer method, the main task involved in setting up the layer data is to interpolate the top and bottom layer elevations from a set of scatter points. The interpolation can be performed directly to the MODFLOW arrays using the *to MODFLOW Layers* command in the *Interpolation* menu in the 2D Scatter Point module.

The scatter points can be imported from a tabular scatter point file. For regions with complex stratigraphy such as embedded seams or outcroppings, the scatter point data must be defined carefully. Once interpolated, the scatter point data may result in overlapping layers. These errors can be automatically corrected using the *Model Checker*.

12.5 Sample Problems

To illustrate the process of defining the scatter point data, importing the data, interpolating the elevations, and fixing errors, we will look at a series of example problems. Each example problem illustrates a different problem and describes a simple approach for correctly modeling the stratigraphy.

12.6 Building the Grid

Before discussing the sample problems, we will first define a grid. The grid will be rectangular in shape and have three layers. To build the grid:

- 1. Switch to the 3D Grid module \blacksquare .
- 2. Select the Create Grid command from the Grid menu.
- 3. Enter the following values:

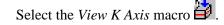
	X-Dimension	Y-Dimension	Z-Dimension	
Origin	500	500	0	
Length	2500	1500	600	
# Cells	50	30	3	

4. Select the *OK* button.

At this point a grid should appear. To view the layers:

Select the View I Axis macro 詞.

Notice that the layers are flat. When a grid is first constructed, GMS assumes a constant layer thickness. To return to top view:



12.7 Case 1 – Complete Layers

The first case we will examine is shown in Figure 12.1. This is the simplest of the cases examined in this tutorial. The site has three layers and all three layers extend over the entire domain of the model.

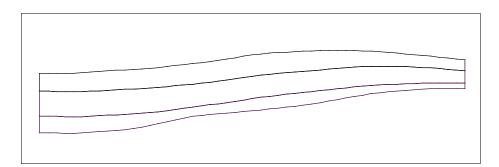


Figure 12.1 Typical East/West Cross Section For Case 1.

12.7.1 Importing the Scatter Point Sets

The first step in defining the layer data is to create a set of points at various xy locations in the model. Each point has an elevation for the top and bottom of each layer. In a real problem, these data would come from sources such as exploratory boreholes. Once these points are created, they are entered in a tabular scatter point file. The scatter point file for Case 1 is shown in Figure 12.2. The first line is a list of column names and the remaining lines are the data values. This file was created in *Microsoft Excel* and exported as a tab-delimited text file. The "id" column is optional. Note that the bottom of layer 1 is assumed to coincide with the top of layer 2. Thus, only four columns are required to define the entire set of elevations.

id	х	У	top1	bot1	bot2	bot3
1	360	1670	450	345	200	100
2	290	870	445	340	195	95
3	480	420	450	350	200	100
4	620	2120	455	245	200	100
5	990	1820	470	355	210	115
6	890	1190	465	350	205	110
7	1030	710	475	360	215	130
8	910	590	470	350	210	125
9	1520	2100	530	405	275	185
10	1410	1560	510	390	260	210
11	1520	910	530	405	275	185
12	1320	430	560	445	305	210
13	2120	1850	580	475	350	260
14	1980	1200	575	455	330	250
15	2100	950	580	465	350	255
16	2530	1720	565	490	370	335
17	2710	1020	550	480	390	350
18	2610	560	555	490	385	345
19	3090	1590	515	450	385	350
20	3040	790	512.5	447.5	382.5	347.5
21	3050	420	512.5	447.5	382.5	347.5
22	495	1250	450	345	200	100

Figure 12.2 Tabular Scatter Point File for Case 1.

The next step is to import the scatter point file. The file has been given an extension of ".sp2". This identifies the file to GMS as a tabular scatter point file. To import the file:

- 1. Select the *Import* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. At the bottom of the *Open* dialog, select the "*.sp2" filter.
- 3. Locate and open the file entitled *tutorial**layerdata**case1.sp2*.

12.7.2 Interpolating the Elevation Values

You should see a set of points appear on the screen. This new scatter point set has four data sets: top1, bot1, bot2, and bot3. The next step is to interpolate each of these data sets to the appropriate layer in the MODFLOW array. Before interpolating the points, we need to initialize the MODFLOW data.

Select the *New Simulation* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.

By default, the top layer is unconfined and the underlying layers are all classified as confined. If the water table is expected to drop below the bottom of the top layer, the underlying layers should be designated as hybrid (confined/unconfined) layers. For simplicity, we will use the default values.

To interpolate the elevation values:

- 1. Switch to the 2D Scatter Point module
- 2. Select the to MODFLOW Layers command in the Interpolation menu.

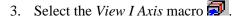
The dialog you now see is used to define which scatter point data sets are interpolated to which MODFLOW arrays. The data sets are listed at the top left and the MODFLOW arrays are listed at the top right of the dialog. The "mapped" relationships are listed at the bottom of the dialog. GMS tries to automatically map the relationships based on the data set names. In this case, all of the relationships were correctly mapped and we can continue.

Select the OK button.

12.7.3 Viewing the Results

To view the results, we will look at a cross section view. Before switching to a side view, we will first select a cell in the interior of the model. If a cell is selected when switching to a side view, the view will change to the row or column passing through the selected cell.

- 1. Switch to the *3D Grid* module
- 2. Select a cell near the middle of the grid.



Notice that the interpolated layer matches the cross section shown in Figure 12.1. You may wish to use the arrow buttons in the *Mini-Grid Display* to view the cross sections along other rows.

12.8 Case 2 – Embedded Seam

The next case we will examine is illustrated in Figure 12.3. In this case, the middle layer is an embedded seam that only exists on the left (West) side of the model. This type of layer is more difficult to model with MODFLOW since a full array of K values must be defined for each layer. Making the cells in the second layer inactive on the right side of the model will not work since this will result in a no-flow boundary between the first and third layers. To model the seam correctly, we will use a three layer model and the second layer will extend throughout the entire model domain. However, we will adjust the layer thickness of the second layer so that the cells will be very small on the right side of the model, thus simulating the pinchout.

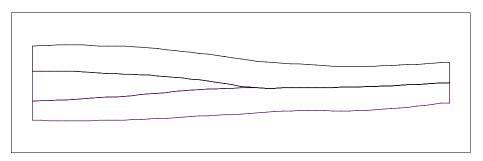


Figure 12.3 Typical East/West Cross Section Through Site with Embedded Seam.

12.8.1 Importing the Scatter Points

Next, we will import the scatter points for Case 2. The scatter point file is formatted as shown above in Figure 12.2. However, the elevations for the second layer on the right side of the model are adjusted so that the bottom of layer 2 is ABOVE the top of layer 2. This overlap will be fixed after the values are interpolated.

Before importing the new points, we will delete the old points. While it is possible to have multiple scatter points sets in memory at once, we will delete the first set since we are finished with the points.

1. Switch to the 2D Scatter Point module

- 2. Select the *Delete All* command from the *Edit* menu.
- 3. Select *OK* at the prompt.

To import the points:

- 1. Select the *Import* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Open the file entitled *case2.sp2*.

12.8.2 Interpolating the Values

To interpolated the values from the new scatter points:

- 1. Select the *to MODFLOW Layers* command from the *Interpolation* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

Note how the middle layer becomes inverted on the right side of the model.

12.8.3 Correcting the Layer Data

The next step is to fix the overlap on the right side of the model using the layer data tools in the MODFLOW model checker.

- 1. Switch to the *3D Grid* module
- 2. Select the *Check Simulation* command in the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 3. Select the *Run Check* command.
- 4. Scroll down to where the errors for the BCF package are shown. Note that a set of layer elevation errors are shown.
- 5. Select the *Fix Layer Errors* button.

The *Fix Layer Errors* dialog provides several options for correcting layer errors. Notice that several errors are listed for layer 2. The correction options are shown on the left. For this case, we will use the *Average* option. This method computes the average of the top and bottom elevation for each cell and moves the top elevation to be just above the average and the bottom elevation to be just below the average. The final difference between the top and the bottom is set to the *Minimum thickness* value shown in the dialog.

1. Select *Layer 2* in the list on the right side of the dialog.

- 2. Select the Average option.
- 3. Select the *Fix Selected Layer* button.
- 4. Select *OK* to exit the *Fix Layer Errors* dialog.
- 5. Select *Done* to exit the *Model Checker* dialog.

Note that the seam is now properly modeled. You may wish to use the arrow buttons in the *Mini-Grid Display* to view the cross sections along other rows.

12.9 Case 3 – Outcropping

The next case we will examine is shown in Figure 12.4. In this case, the top layer is an outcropping that only exists on the left side of the model. We will model this case using a three layer model and adjusting the thickness of the top layer so that it goes to a very small value on the right side of the model.

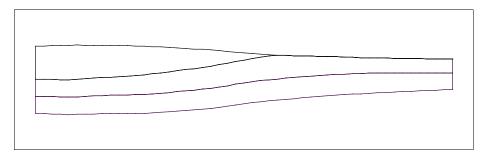


Figure 12.4 Typical East/West Cross Section Through Site with Outcropping.

12.9.1 Importing the Points

In this case, the elevations for the scatter points have been adjusted so that the bottom of the first layer extends above the top of the second layer on the right side of the model. After interpolating the values, we will then adjust the elevations.

Before importing the scatter point set, we will delete the old points:

- 1. Switch to the 2D Scatter Point module
- 2. Select the *Delete All* command from the *Edit* menu.
- 3. Select *OK* at the prompt.

To import the points:

- 1. Select the *Import* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Open the file entitled *case3.sp2*.

12.9.2 Interpolating the Values

To interpolate the values:

- 1. Select the to MODFLOW Layers command in the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

Note how the bottom of the first layer extends above the ground surface on the right side of the model.

12.9.3 Correcting the Layer Values

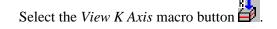
To correct the layer errors:

- 1. Switch to the *3D Grid* module III.
- 2. Select the Check Simulation command in the MODFLOW menu.
- 3. Select the *Run Check* command.
- 4. Select the *Fix Layer Errors* button.

In this case, we wish to fix the errors for layer one by moving the bottom of layer one down to were it is just below the ground surface. This can be accomplished using the *Preserve top* option.

- 1. Select the *Preserve top* option.
- 2. Make sure *Layer 1* is selected in the list.
- 3. Select the Fix Selected Layer button.
- 4. Exit both dialogs.

Notice how the outcropping is now properly modeled. When finished viewing the cross section:



12.10 Case 4 – Bedrock Truncation

The final case we will examine is shown in Figure 12.5. The site has three layers but the layers are truncated by the bedrock on the sides of the model. We will model this situation by inactivating the cells on the perimeter of the model that are below the bedrock elevation. We will also adjust the layer bottom elevations as necessary to accurately model the bedrock.

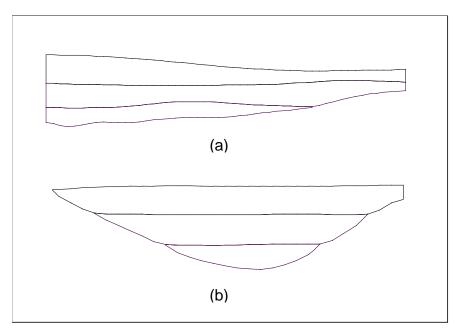


Figure 12.5 Typical a) East/West and b) North/South Cross Section Through Site with Layers Truncated by Bedrock.

12.10.1 Importing the Scatter Points

Before importing the scatter point set, we will delete the old points:

- 1. Switch to the 2D Scatter Point module
- 2. Select the *Delete All* command from the *Edit* menu.
- 3. Select *OK* at the prompt.

To import the points:

- 1. Select the *Import* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Open the file entitled *case4.sp2*.

12.10.2 Interpolating the Values

To interpolate the values:

- 1. Select the to MODFLOW Layers command.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

12.10.3 Viewing the Results

To view the results:

- 1. Switch to the *3D Grid* module
- 2. Select a cell near the middle of the grid.
- 3. Select the *View I Axis* macro 🧖 .
- 4. Select the *View J Axis* macro

Note how the bottom of the third layer (the top of the bedrock) cuts into the upper layers.

12.10.4 Correcting the Layer Values

To correct the layer errors:

- 1. Select the *Check Simulation* command in the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Select the *Run Check* command.
- 3. Select the *Fix Layer Errors* button.

In this case, a customized option called *Truncate to bedrock* is perfectly suited to our problem. This method examines the elevations for each cell and if the bedrock elevation (the bottom elevation for the bottom layer) is above the top elevation of the cell, the cell is made inactive. If the bedrock elevation is below the top of the cell but below the bottom, the bottom elevation is adjusted to match the bedrock elevation.

- 1. Select the *Truncate to bedrock* option.
- 2. Select the Fix Affected Layers button.
- 3. Exit both dialogs.

12.10.5 Viewing the Corrected Layers

Notice how the outcropping is now properly modeled. To view the cross sections:

- 1. Use the arrow buttons → in the *Mini-Grid Display* to view the grid along different columns.
- 2. Select the *View I Axis* macro 🥏 .
- 3. Use the arrow buttons **Z** to view the grid along different rows.

Next, we will switch to plan view and see how the cells on the perimeter of the grid have been made inactive.

- 1. Select the *View K Axis* macro
- 2. Use the arrow buttons \uparrow \clubsuit to view the grid on different layers.

Finally, we will view the grid in general mode to see a 3D plot of the stratigraphy:

- 1. Select the General Mode command in the View menu.
- 2. Select the *Oblique View* macro
- 3. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}\Theta$

You may wish to use the *Rotate* tool ***** to view the grid from different viewpoints.

12.11 Conclusion

This concludes the *Defining Layer Data* tutorial. If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select No at the prompt.

CHAPTER

Regional to Local Model Conversion

For many modeling studies, determining an appropriate set of boundary conditions can be difficult. It is often the case that classical boundaries such as rock outcroppings, rivers, lakes, and groundwater divides, may be located at a great distance from the site of interest. In such cases, it is often convenient to perform the modeling study in two phases. In the first phase, a large, regional scale model is constructed and the model is extended to well-defined boundaries. During the second stage, a second, smaller, local scale model is constructed that occupies a small area within the regional model. The groundwater elevations computed from the regional model are applied as specified head boundary conditions to the local scale model. The layer data, including elevations and transmissivities, are also interpolated from the regional to the local model. A more detailed representation of the local flow conditions, including low capacity wells and barriers not included in the regional flow model can be constructed in the local scale model. Regional to local model conversion is often referred to as "telescopic grid refinement."

GMS provides a convenient set of tools that can be used for regional to local model conversion. The steps involved in a typical regional to local model conversion using MODFLOW are described in this tutorial.

Description of Problem

The site we will be modeling in this tutorial is shown in Figure 13.1. The main features of the regional model are shown. Most of the boundaries are no-flow boundaries corresponding to groundwater flow divides, bedrock outcroppings, and natural flow boundaries. A river runs through the left side

of the model. The narrow regions where the river enters and exits the model are modeled as specified head boundaries. There are four major productions wells in the region. The site will be modeled using two layers: a lower confined layer and an upper unconfined layer.

The local site is situated in the interior of the model. The local site corresponds to a chemical plant with a small spill. Once the regional model is completed, a local scale model is to be developed and then used to analyze a number of injection/extraction well placement scenarios. The wells are part of a treatment system that is being designed.

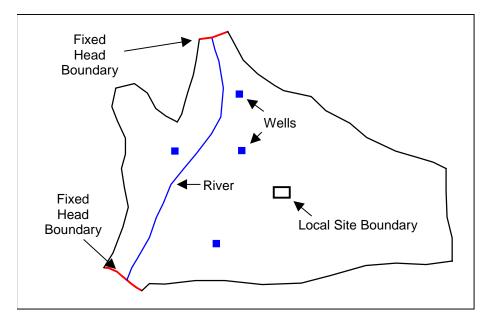


Figure 13.1 Regional Model.

The basic goal of the regional to local model conversion process is to create a 2D scatter point set containing the heads and layer data arrays from the regional model, create the local model, and interpolate the heads and layer data to the local model. A 2D scatter point set is used since the MODFLOW arrays should be interpolated on a layer by layer basis using 2D interpolation. GMS provides a set of tools that greatly simplify this process. The basic steps are as follows:

- 1. Generate the regional model and compute a solution.
- 2. Use the MODFLOW *Layers -> 2D Scatter Points* command to create the scatter point set with the layer and head data from the regional model.
- 3. Create the 3D grid for the local scale model.

4. Interpolate the heads and layer data values from the scatter points to the MODFLOW layer arrays for the local scale model.

Each of these steps will be described in more detail below.

13.1 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

13.2 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The 2D Grid module
- The *3D Grid* module
- The 2D Scatter Point module
- The *Map* module
- The MODFLOW interface

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If you have licensed and enabled each of the listed items on your version of GMS, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to obtain an updated password or hardware lock before continuing. The tutorial cannot be completed in demo mode because the ability to save files is required.

13.3 Reading in the Regional Model

The first step in the model conversion process is to build a regional model. Since the focus of this tutorial is primarily on the conversion process, we will read in a previously constructed model.

- 1. Select the *Open* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Locate and open the file entitled *tutorial**reg2loc**regmod.gpr*.

We are now viewing the top layer of the two layer model. You may wish to use the arrow buttons in the *Tool Palette* to view the bottom layer. The wells are located in the bottom layer. When you are finished, return to the top layer.

This model was constructed using the conceptual model approach. The boundary of the local site is indicated with a red rectangle. The conceptual model consists of three coverages. The coverage we are viewing is for the sources and sinks. There is also a coverage defining recharge zones and a coverage defining hydraulic conductivity zones for the top layer. The large rectangular boundary is the grid frame.

The project we imported includes the solution for the regional model. You should see contours of computed head.

13.4 Converting the Layer Data to a Scatter Point Set

The first step in converting the regional model to a local model is to convert the MODFLOW layer data to a 2D scatter point set.

- 1. Switch to the 3D Grid module 1.
- 2. Select the *MODFLOW Layers -> 2D Scatter Points* command from the *Grid* menu.
- 3. Change the scatter point set name to *Regional Data*.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

You should see a set of scatter points appear at the location of the cell centroids. This scatter point set has a data set for the computed heads and for the top and bottom elevations of the model layers.

13.5 Approaches to Building the Local Model

Next, we will build the local model. There are numerous approaches to building the local model. A common approach is to mark the boundaries of the local model as specified head boundaries using the computed head values from the regional model. There are two methods to accomplish this objective:

- 1. A simple rectangular grid is constructed and the entire perimeter of the grid is marked as a specified head boundary.
- 2. A four-sided grid is constructed where two opposite boundaries are parallel to head contours from the regional model (i.e., a constant head value along each boundary). The other two boundaries are no flow

boundaries and are perpendicular to the head contours from the regional model.

We will use the second method.

13.6 Building the Local Conceptual Model

The simplest way to build the local model is to create a conceptual model in the *Map* module. To do this, we will create a new source/sink coverage. First, we will delete the source/sink coverage for the regional model:

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module
- 2. Select the Coverages command from the Feature Object menu.
- 3. Check to make sure that the "ss" coverage is active.
- 4. Select the *Delete* button.
- 5. Select OK to confirm.

13.6.1 Creating a New Coverage

Next, we will create a new source/sink coverage.

- 1. Select the *New* button.
- 2. Change the name of the coverage to "local ss".
- 3. Change the coverage type to MODF/MT3D/MODP.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

Note that we did not delete the recharge and hydraulic conductivity coverages. We will use these coverages to construct our local model. The boundaries of the coverages are larger than they need to be but that does not matter.

13.6.2 Creating the Boundary Arcs

Next, we will create the boundary arcs. First, we need to zoom in on the local site model:

- 1. Select the *Zoom* tool \bigcirc
- 2. Drag a box around the local site boundary (the red rectangle).

Create the boundaries as follows:

- 1. Select the *Create Arc* tool
- 2. Create four arcs, two parallel to the contours, and two perpendicular to the contours as shown in Figure 13.2. Double click on the corners to end each arc.

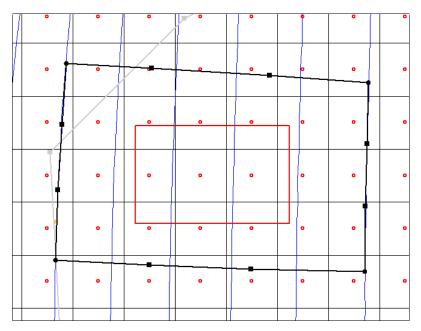


Figure 13.2 Arcs to be Created on Boundary of Local Model.

13.6.3 Building the Polygon

Next, we will use the arcs to build a polygon defining the model domain.

- 1. Select the Build Polygons command from the Feature Object menu.
- 2. Confirm that we want to use all of the arcs by selecting the *OK* button.

We need to be sure that the polygon is assigned to both grid layers.

- 1. Choose the *Select Polygons* tool \square .
- 2. Double click on the polygon.
- 3. Change the layer assignment to go from layer 1 to 2.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

13.6.4 Marking the Specified Head Arcs

The next step is mark the specified head boundaries.

- 1. Select the *Select Arcs* tool .
- 2. While holding the *Shift* key, select the arcs on the left and right sides of the model.
- 3. Select the Attributes command in the Feature Object menu.
- 4. Change the type to *Specified Head*.
- 5. At the bottom of the dialog, change the layer assignment so that it goes from 1 to 2.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.

Normally, at this point we would select the nodes of the specified head arcs and assign a head value. However, we are going to override the head values using the computed heads from the regional model.

13.7 Creating the Local MODFLOW Model

We are now ready to convert the conceptual model to a grid model. First, we will create a new grid frame that fits the local model.

- 1. Select the Grid Frame command from the Feature Objects menu.
- 2. Select the *Delete Frame* button to delete the old frame.
- 3. Select the *New Frame* button to create a new frame fitted to the new model boundary. The grid frame should be slightly larger than the area enclosed by the arcs.
- 4. If desired, you can use the rotation handle near the lower right corner of the grid frame to rotate the grid to better match the local grid boundary. You may need to move the dialog to edit the grid frame.
- 5. Select the *OK* button to exit the dialog.

13.7.1 Creating the Grid

Next, we will create the grid.

1. Select the *Map -> 3D Grid* command from the *Feature Object* menu.

- 2. Select *OK* to confirm the deletion of the current 3D grid.
- 3. Select OK again to confirm deletion of the MODFLOW data.
- 4. In the *Create Grid* dialog, enter 60 for the number of cells in the x direction, 50 for the number of cells in the y direction, and 2 for the number of cells in the z direction.
- 5. Select *OK* to create the grid.

You should see a grid appear. You can zoom in to examine the grid.

- 1. Select the *Zoom* tool \square .
- 2. Drag a box around the grid.

13.7.2 Activating the Cells

Next, we will inactivate the exterior cells.

Select the *Activate Cells in Coverage* command from the *Feature Objects* menu. If the arcs match the grid boundary closely, you may not see any cells inactivated. If, however, the grid extends significantly beyond the arcs, some cells will be inactivated.

13.7.3 Mapping the Attributes

Next, we will convert the MODFLOW data to the grid.

- 1. Switch to the 3D Grid module \square .
- 2. Select the *New Simulation* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 3. Switch back to the *Map* module
- 4. Select the *Map* -> *MODFLOW* command from the *Feature Object* menu.
- 5. Select *OK* at the prompt.
- 6. Once again, you may wish to zoom in on the grid.

Note: At this point, our local scale model does not include the wells involved in the pump and treat system. These could be added at a later time.

13.8 Interpolating the Layer Data

The final step in the conversion process is to interpolate the regional data from the scatter points to the MODFLOW layer arrays.

- 1. Switch to the 2D Scatter Point module
- 2. Select the *to MODFLOW Layers* command from the *Interpolation* menu.
- 3. At the bottom of the dialog, select the *Apply starting head to all cells* option.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

13.9 Saving and Running the Local Model

We are now ready to save the MODFLOW model and run the simulation.

- 1. Switch to the *3D Grid* module **.**
- 2. Select the Save As command from the MODFLOW menu.
- 3. Change the filename to *locmod.mfs*.
- 4. Select the *Save* button.

To run MODFLOW:

- 1. Select the *Run MODFLOW* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt.
- 3. When the simulation is finished, close the window and return to GMS.

13.10 Viewing the Results

Finally, we will read in the computed head values for the local model.

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Select OK at the prompt.
- 3. Once again, zoom in on the grid.

Once the file is finished reading, you should see a set of head contours that closely resemble the head contours from the regional model. At this point, the local flow model is complete and the injection and extraction wells could be added for the pump and treat simulations.

13.11 Conclusion

This concludes the *Regional to Local Model Conversion* tutorial. If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *No* at the prompt.

CHAPTER

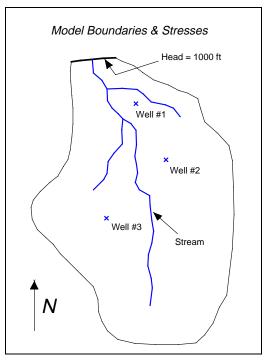
Model Calibration

An important part of any groundwater modeling exercise is the model calibration process. In order for a groundwater model to be used in any type of predictive role, it must be demonstrated that the model can successfully simulate observed aquifer behavior. Calibration is a process wherein certain parameters of the model such as recharge and hydraulic conductivity are altered in a systematic fashion and the model is repeatedly run until the computed solution matches field-observed values within an acceptable level of accuracy. GMS contains a suite of tools to assist in the model calibration process. These tools are described in this tutorial.

The model calibration exercise in this tutorial is based on the MODFLOW model. Thus, you may wish to complete the MODFLOW - *Conceptual Model Approach* tutorial prior to beginning this tutorial. Although this particular exercise is based on MODFLOW, the calibration tools in GMS are designed in a general purpose fashion and can be used with any model.

14.1 Description of Problem

A groundwater model for a medium-sized basin is shown in Figure 14.1. The basin encompasses 28 square miles. It is in a semi-arid climate, with average annual precipitation of 1.25 ft/yr. Most of this precipitation is lost through evapotranspiration. The recharge which reaches the aquifer eventually drains into a small stream at the center of the basin. This stream drains to the north and eventually empties into a lake with elevation 1000 ft. Three wells in the basin also extract water from the aquifer. The perimeter of the basin is bounded by low permeability crystalline rock. There are ten observation wells



in the basin. There is also a stream flow gauge at the bottom end of the stream.

Figure 14.1 Sample Model Used in Calibration Exercise.

The assumed recharge and hydraulic conductivity zones for the model are shown in Figure 14.2. The model region encompasses fractured and weathered bedrock as well as alluvial material, grading from hydraulically tighter materials in the south to more permeable materials in the north. Furthermore, the materials around the stream tend to be coarser, cleaner, and thus more permeable. The topmost region of the model near the lake has a high level of phreatophytic plant life.

The first task of this exercise will be to import a single layer, unconfined MODFLOW model that has been constructed for the site. This model contains an initial estimate of hydraulic conductivities and recharge. A solution computed with this initial model will then be imported and the error in the initial solution will be analyzed. New values for hydraulic conductivity and/or recharge will then be entered, a new solution will be generated, and a new error estimate will be computed. These steps will be repeated until the error is reasonably small.

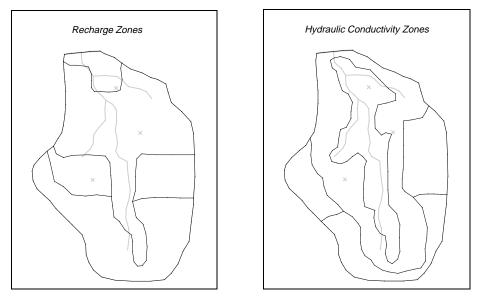


Figure 14.2 Recharge and Hydraulic Conductivity Zones.

14.2 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

14.3 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The *3D Grid* module
- The *Map* module +
- The MODFLOW interface

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If you have licensed and enabled each of the listed items on your version of GMS, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to obtain an updated password or hardware lock before continuing. The tutorial cannot be completed in demo mode because the ability to save files is required.

14.4 Reading in the Model

First, we will read in the model:

- 1. Select the Open command from the File menu.
- 2. Locate and open the *tutorial**calib* directory.
- 3. Select the file entitled *bigval.gpr*.
- 4. Select the *Open* button.

You should see both a grid and a conceptual model appear. The conceptual model consists of three coverages. The currently active coverage contains the model boundary, the specified head boundary, the stream, and the wells. There is also a coverage of recharge zones and a coverage of hydraulic conductivity zones. For the initial simulation, a single value of hydraulic conductivity (8.0 ft/day) and a single value of recharge (2.5e-4 ft/day) have been assigned. The polygonal zones of hydraulic conductivity and recharge will be edited as the tutorial progresses to reduce the model error.

The conceptual model was used to construct the MODFLOW model that is shown. The contours shown are the computed head values from the initial model parameter values.

14.5 Observation Data

We will be using two types of observation data in the calibration process: water table elevations from observation wells and observed flow rates in the stream. Since the model is in a fairly arid region, we will assume that most of the flow to the stream is from groundwater flux.

14.6 Entering Observation Points

First, we will enter a set of observation points representing the observed head in the ten observation wells in the region. Observation points are created in an observation coverage in the *Map* module.

14.6.1 Creating an Observation Coverage

Before entering observation points, we must first create an observation coverage.

1. Switch to the *Map* module **†**.

- 2. Select the *Coverages* command from the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 3. Select the *New* button.
- 4. Enter "Observation Wells" for the name of the coverage.
- 5. Select *Observation* for the coverage type.
- 6. Select the *Options* button below the *Observation* option.

This dialog is used to define which object the observation points are to be associated with, the type of interpolation used, and the names of the observed measurement types.

- 1. Make sure the 3D Grid option is selected.
- 2. Select the 2D within layer option.

For MODFLOW, this is typically the best option. It restricts the interpolation to cells in the same layer as the observation point.

- 3. Select the New button in the Measurement Type section.
- 4. Enter *Head* for the measurement type name.
- 5. Select the OK button to exit the Observation Coverage Options dialog.
- 6. Select the *OK* button to exit the *Coverages* dialog.

14.6.2 Creating an Observation Point

We are now ready to create an observation point. The first point we will be creating has the following values:

x [ft]	y [ft]	Head [ft]	Interval [ft]	Confidence [%]
14661	32694	999.0	1.5	95

The interval represents the estimated error (\pm) in the observed value. The confidence value represents the confidence in the error estimate. The interval can be used as a calibration target. Calibration is achieved when the error is within estimated error interval $(\pm 1.5 \text{ ft in this case})$ of the observed value. In other words, if the computed head falls between 997.5 - 1000.5, the calibration target is reached for this observation well.

To create the point:

- 1. Select the *Create Point* tool
- 2. Click once anywhere on the model.

- 3. Double click on the value in the *X* edit field at the top of the GMS screen.
- 4. Enter a value of 14661 and select the *Tab* key.
- 5. Enter a value of 32694 in the *Y* edit field and select the *Tab* key.

To assign the attributes to the point:

- 1. Select the *Attributes* command in the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 2. Enter "Point #1" for the name of the point.
- 3. Turn on the Observed option.

Note: If the *Observed* option is not on, the point can be used to monitor computed values, but not to compare computed vs. observed values.

- 4. Enter 999.0 for the Observed value.
- 5. Enter 1.5 for the *Interval*.
- 6. Enter 95 for the *Confidence*.
- 7. Select the *OK* button.

14.6.3 Calibration Target

Note that a calibration target is drawn next to the point. The components of a calibration target are illustrated in Figure 14.3. The center of the target corresponds to the observed value. The top of the target corresponds to the observed value plus the interval and the bottom corresponds to the observed value minus the interval. The colored bar represents the error. If the bar lies entirely within the target, the color bar is drawn in green. If the bar is outside the target but the error is less than 200%, the bar is drawn in yellow. If the error is greater than 200%, the bar is drawn in red.

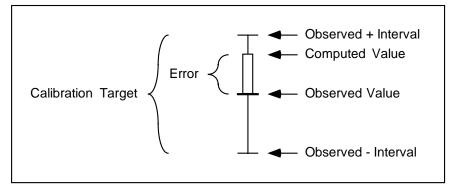


Figure 14.3 Calibration Target.

14.6.4 Point Statistics

We can view more detailed statistics concerning the error at the point by selecting the point.

- 1. Select the *Select Points/Nodes* tool
- 2. Click on the observation point.

Notice that a set of statistics related to the point is displayed in the *Help Bar* at the bottom of the GMS screen.

14.7 Reading in a Set of Observation Points

Using the steps defined above, we could proceed to enter the remaining nine observation points. However, in the interest of time, we will simply read in a previously prepared map file containing all ten points.

14.7.1 Deleting the Current Coverage

Before reading in the observation points, we will first delete the current coverage.

- 1. Select the *Coverages* command from the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 2. Make sure the *Observation Wells* coverage is selected.
- 3. Select the *Delete* button.
- 4. Select OK at the prompt.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

14.7.2 Reading in the Points

Using the steps defined above, a point was created for each of the observation wells. The coverage containing these points was saved to a map file. We will now read in that file.

- 1. Select the *Open* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select No at the prompt to indicate we don't wish to save the project.
- 3. Change the file filter to *.*map*.
- 4. Select the file entitled obswells.map.
- 5. Select the Open button.

14.8 Entering the Observed Stream Flux

Now that the observation points are defined, we will enter the observed flux in the stream. Observed fluxes are assigned directly to arcs and polygons in the local source/sink coverage of the conceptual model. We will assign an observed flux to the river arcs. When we read in a solution, GMS will parse through the CCF file and automatically calculate the computed flux to the stream. This flux value will be compared to the observed flux.

GMS provides two methods for assigning observed flux: to individual arcs or to a group of arcs. The stream flow that was measured at the site represents the total stream flow at the stream outlet at the top of the model. This flow represents the flux to the stream for the entire stream network. Thus, we need to assign the observed flux to a group of arcs. When reading a solution, GMS will then automatically sum the computed flux for all arcs in the group. Before assigning the observed flux, we must first create an arc group:

- 1. In the *Coverage* combo box at the top of the window, select the *Sources & Sinks* coverage.
- 2. Select the *Select Arcs* tool .
- 3. While holding down the *Shift* key, click on each of the river arcs.
- 4. Select the Create Arc Group command from the Feature Object menu.

This creates a new object out of the selected objects. We can now assign an observed flux to the arc group.

1. Select the *Select Arc Groups* tool **F**.

- 2. Double click on any of the river arcs.
- 3. Turn on the Observed flux option.
- 4. Select the Options button.
- 5. In the Observed Values section, enter a value of -167000 for the *Steady state flux rate*.
- 6. In the *Confidence interval* section, enter a value of 7500 for the *Interval*.

The values we entered indicate that to achieve calibration, the computed flux should be between -159500 and 174500 ft³/day (167000 +/- 7500).

- 1. Select the *OK* button twice to exit both dialogs.
- 2. Click outside the arc group to unselect it.

At this point, you should see a calibration target appear for the observed flux on the arc group.

14.9 Generating Error Plots

Next, we will generate some plots related to the calibration error. We will create two plots related to error at the observation points.

- 1. Select the *Observation Wells* coverage from the *Coverages* combo box at the top of the GMS screen.
- 2. Select the *Obs. Plot Options* command from the *Display* menu.
- 3. Select the *New* button.
- 4. Leave the type as *Computed vs. observed* (this should be the default).
- 5. Select the New button again.
- 6. Change the type to *Error Summary*.
- 7. Select the *OK* button.
- 8. Select the Show Plot Window command from the Display menu.
- 9. Select the *Frame Image* macro

14.9.1 Computed vs. Observed Plot

In the first plot, a symbol is drawn for each of the observation points. A point that plots on or near the diagonal line indicates a low error. Points far from the diagonal have a larger error. To determine which symbol goes with which point.

Click on one of the symbols in the *Computed vs. Observed* plot in the *Plot Window*.

Notice that the observation point corresponding to the symbol was selected in the *Graphics Window*. Also notice that the calibration statistics for the point are displayed in the *Help Window*.

14.9.2 Error Summary

In the *Error Summary*, three types of error norms are reported. The mean error is simply the average error for the points. This value can be misleading since positive and negative errors can cancel. The mean absolute error is the average of the absolute values of the errors. This value is more representative of the average error of all the points (since positive and negative errors do not cancel each other). The root mean square error is the square root of the mean of the errors squared. This error norm tends to give more weight to cases where a few extreme error values exist.

14.10 Editing the Hydraulic Conductivity

The next step in the calibration exercise is to change the model parameters and re-run the model. Note that the errors on the left and right side of the model are mostly red and negative. This indicates that the observed value is much larger than the current computed value. We will begin by changing the hydraulic conductivity in these zones. The hydraulic conductivity will be edited by changing the hydraulic conductivity assigned to the polygonal zones in the conceptual model.

Before editing the hydraulic conductivity values, we will first make the hydraulic conductivity zone coverage the active coverage.

In the *Coverages* combo box at the top of the window, select the *Hydraulic Conductivity* coverage.

To edit the hydraulic conductivity values:

1. Select the *Select Polygons* tool

- 2. While holding the *Shift* key, select polygons 1 and 2 shown in Figure 14.4.
- 3. Select the Attributes command in the Feature Objects menu.
- 4. Enter a value of 2.0 for the *Horizontal K*.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.
- 6. Double click on polygon 3 shown in Figure 14.4.
- 7. Enter a value of 0.5 for the *Horizontal K*.
- 8. Select the *OK* button.
- 9. Click outside the model to unselect the polygon.

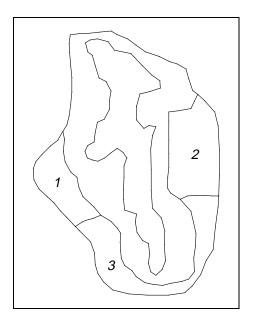


Figure 14.4 Polygons to be Selected.

14.11 Converting the Model

Now that the values have been edited, the next step is to convert the conceptual model to the grid-based numerical model:

- 1. Select the *Map* -> *MODFLOW* command from the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 2. At the prompt, make sure the *All applicable coverages* option is selected and select *OK*.

14.12 Computing a Solution

The next step is to save the MODFLOW model with the new values and compute a new solution.

14.12.1 Saving the Simulation

To save the simulation:

- 1. Switch to the *3D Grid* module
- 2. Select the Save As command from the MODFLOW menu.
- 3. Enter "run2.mfs" for the file name.
- 4. Select the *Save* button.

14.12.2 Running MODFLOW

To run MODFLOW:

- 1. Select the *Run MODFLOW* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt.

When the MODFLOW simulation is completed, close the MODFLOW window and return to GMS.

14.13 Reading in the Solution

Next, we will read in the MODFLOW solution and view the error associated with the new solution.

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command from the *MODFLOW* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

Note that the plots in the *Plot Window* have been updated. All three error norms are lower. Up to this point we have not paid much attention to our flux target on the arc group. In the next section, we will create a plot that shows how well the flux target is being met.

Note that although the error improved for the observation wells, the head is still too low on the left and right sides of the model.

14.14 Error vs. Simulation Plot

When performing trial and error calibration, it is important to keep track of the trend in the error as new solutions are repeatedly computed. GMS provides a special calibration plot to simplify this task. We will make such a plot for both the flux and observation wells.

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module
- 2. Select the Obs. Plot Options command in the Display menu.
- 3. Select the *Plot #2* item in the list on the left.
- 4. Select the *Delete* button.
- 5. Select the *New* button.
- 6. Change the *Plot type* to *Error vs. Simulation*.
- 7. Select the New button again.
- 8. Change the *Observation type* to *Flux*.
- 9. Change the Plot type to Error vs. Simulation.
- 10. Select the OK button.

The change in each of the three error norms from one solution to the next is clearly visible in the bottom two plots. The plots are updated as each new solution is read in. Ideally, as you make changes to the model, the error should gradually become smaller and smaller. If a bad choice is made in changing the model, the error may temporarily increase. In most cases, it is a good idea to keep a log of the changes made and the resulting errors.

14.15 Continuing the Trial and Error Calibration

At this point, you are free to continue on your own with the trial and error calibration process using the steps outlined above. You may wish to change both the recharge and the hydraulic conductivity values. Before you edit the recharge values, be sure to make the coverage visible when you select it in the *Coverages* dialog.

14.15.1 Changing Values vs. Changing Zones

For this tutorial, you should be able to get a good match between the computed and observed values simply by changing the hydraulic conductivity and recharge values assigned to the polygonal zones. In a real application, however, you may also need to change the size and distribution of the zones, in addition to the values assigned to the zones.

14.15.2 Viewing the Answer

If you wish to view the "answer", a map file can be imported which contains a set of parameter values which result in a solution that satisfies the calibration target for each of the ten observation wells.

Before reading in the new conceptual model, you must first delete each of the three MODFLOW coverages:

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module
- 2. Select the Coverages command in the Feature Objects menu.
- 3. Highlight and delete each of the three MODFLOW coverages (Sources & Sinks, Recharge, and Hydraulic Conductivity).
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

To read in the new conceptual model:

- 1. Select the Open command in the File menu.
- 2. Select No at the prompt to confirm we don't want to save our changes.
- 3. Select the file titled *answer.map*.
- 4. Select the *Open* button.

You can now convert this model to the grid and compute a new solution using the steps described above.

14.16 Conclusion

This concludes the *Model Calibration* tutorial. If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 3. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 4. Select *No* at the prompt.

CHAPTER

FEMWATER – Flow Model

FEMWATER is a three-dimensional finite element ground water model. It can be used to simulate flow and transport in both the saturated and the unsaturated zone. Furthermore, the flow and transport can be coupled to simulate density dependent problems such as salinity intrusion. This tutorial describes how to build a FEMWATER model to simulate flow only.

15.1 Description of Problem

The site to be modeled in this tutorial is shown in Figure 15.1. The site is a small coastal aquifer with three production wells, each pumping at a rate of 100,000 ft^3/day. The no flow boundary on the upper left corresponds to a parallel flow boundary and the no flow boundary on the left corresponds to a thinning of the aquifer due to a high bedrock elevation. A stream provides a specified head boundary on the lower left and the remaining boundary is a coastal boundary simulated with a specified head condition.

The stratigraphy of the site consists of an upper and lower aquifer. The upper aquifer has a hydraulic conductivity of 10 ft/day and the lower aquifer has a hydraulic conductivity of 30 ft/day. The wells extend to the lower aquifer. The recharge to the aquifer is about one foot per year. The objective of this tutorial is to create a steady state flow model of the site.

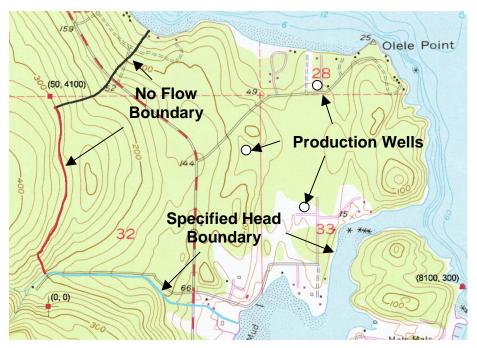


Figure 15.1 Site to be Modeled with FEMWATER Flow Model.

15.2 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

15.3 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The *Mesh* package (the 2D Mesh \blacksquare and 3D Mesh \blacksquare modules)
- The *Map* module \ddagger
- The Subsurface Characterization package (the Borehole , TIN , and Solid modules)
- The *Geostatistics* package (the 2D Scatter Point and 3D Scatter Point modules)
- The FEMWATER interface

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If you have licensed and enabled each of the listed items on your version of GMS, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to obtain an updated password or hardware lock before continuing. The tutorial cannot be completed in demo mode because the ability to save files is required.

15.4 Building the Conceptual Model

FEMWATER models can be constructed using the direct approach or the conceptual model approach. With the direct approach, a mesh is constructed and the boundary conditions are assigned directly to the mesh by interactively selecting nodes and elements. With the conceptual model approach, feature objects (points, arcs, and polygons) are used to define the model domain and boundary conditions. The mesh is then automatically generated and the boundary conditions are automatically assigned. We will use the conceptual model approach for this tutorial.

15.4.1 Importing the Background Image

Before creating the feature objects, we will import a scanned image of the site. The image was generated by scanning a section of a USGS quadrangle map on a desktop scanner. The image has previously been imported to GMS and registered to real world coordinates. The registered image was saved to a GMS project file. To read the image:

- 1. Select the Open command from the File menu.
- 2. Locate and open the directory entitled: *tutorial*/*femwater*
- 3. Select the file entitled *start.gpr* and select the *Open* button.

15.4.2 Initializing the FEMWATER Coverage

Before creating the feature objects, we first need to initialize a FEMWATER coverage.

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module
- 2. Select the *Coverages* command in the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 3. Change the name of the default coverage to *femwater*.
- 4. Change the *Coverage type* to FEMWATER.

15.4.3 Defining the Units

Before exiting the *Coverages* dialog, we will also define the units. GMS uses the units we select to plot helpful labels next to input edit fields.

- 1. Select the Units button.
- 2. Check to ensure that the default *Length* unit is feet and the default *Time* unit is days.
- 3. Change the *Mass* unit to slug. The remaining units are for a transport simulation and can be ignored.
- 4. Select the OK button to exit the Units dialog.
- 5. Select the OK button to exit the Coverages dialog.

15.4.4 Creating the Boundary Arcs

We are now ready to begin creating the arcs defining the boundary of the model. Notice that the three boundaries on the left have been marked on the background image and are color-coded.

- 1. Select the *Create Arc* tool
- 2. Using the boundary lines shown on the backround image, create one arc for each of the three marked boundaries on the left side of the model. Click on a series of points along each line to trace the arc and double click at the end of the boundary to end the arc. Make sure the arcs are connected by starting one arc precisely at ending point of the previous arc.
- 3. Create an arc for the coastline boundary. Once again, be sure the arc is connected to the other boundary arcs.

15.4.5 Redistributing the Arc Vertices

The two endpoints of each arc are called *nodes* and the intermediate points are called *vertices*. These arcs will be used to generate a 2D mesh that will be converted into a 3D mesh. The spacing of the line segments defined by the vertices will control the size and number of elements. Thus, we need to redistribute the vertices along each arc to ensure that they are evenly spaced and of the correct length.

- 1. Select the *Select Arcs* tool \mathbf{F} .
- 2. Select all of the arcs by dragging a box that encloses all of the arcs.

- 3. Select the *Redistribute Vertices* command in the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 4. Change the *Target spacing* to 300.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

15.4.6 Defining the Boundary Conditions

Now that the arcs are defined, we can assign boundary conditions to the arcs. The two no-flow boundaries do not need to be altered since the default boundary type is no-flow. However, we need to mark the stream arc and the coastline arc as constant head arcs.

- 1. Select the *Select Arcs* tool
- 2. While holding down the *Shift* key, click on both the stream arc and on the coastline arc.
- 3. Select the Attributes command in the Feature Objects menu.
- 4. Turn on the *Head/fluid flux* option.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

Note that no head values were assigned to the arcs. The head values are assigned to the nodes at the ends of the arc. This allows the head to vary linearly along the length of the arc. For the coastline arc, the head at both ends is the same. Since the default head value is zero, no changes need to be made. However, we do need to enter a head value for the upper end of the stream. The head will vary linearly along the stream from the specified value at the top to zero at the coast.

- 1. Select the Select Points/Nodes tool $\overline{\Lambda}$.
- 2. Double click on the node at the top (left) end of the stream arc.
- 3. Enter a value of 200 for the head.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

15.4.7 Building the Polygon

Now that the arcs are defined, we are ready to build a polygon defining the model domain. The polygon is necessary for two reasons: 1) it is used to define the model domain when the mesh is generated, and 2) it is used to assign the recharge. In many cases, the model domain is subdivided into

multiple recharge zones, each defined by a polygon. In this case, we will use one polygon since we have a single recharge value.

- 1. Select the *Build Polygon* command from the Feature Objects menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt to indicate we want to use all arcs.

15.4.8 Assigning the Recharge

Next, we will assign the recharge value. There are two ways to assign recharge in FEMWATER: using a specified flux boundary or using a variable boundary. The variable boundary is more accurate but it is more timeconsuming and less stable. To ensure that the tutorial can be completed in a timely fashion, we will use the simpler specified flux approach.

- 1. Select the *Select Polygons* tool
- 2. Double click anywhere in the interior of the model domain.
- 3. Turn on the *Fluid flux* option.
- 4. Enter a value of 0.003 for the flux (this value is in ft/d and corresponds to about 1.1 ft/yr).
- 5. Select the *OK* button.
- 6. Click anywhere outside the polygon to unselect it.

15.4.9 Creating the Wells

The final step in defining the conceptual model is to create the wells. To create the first well, do the following:

- 1. Select the *Create Point* tool **.
- 2. Click on a point anywhere in the upper right corner of the model.
- 3. Using the edit fields at the top of the screen, change the xyz coordinates of the point you just created to (5290, 4206, 45). Hit the *Tab* or *Enter* key after entering each value.
- 4. With the point still selected, select the *Attributes* command from the *Feature Objects* menu.

First, we will set the "Refine" option so that the mesh is refined around the well.

- 1. Turn on the *Refine mesh around point* option.
- 2. Enter 150 for the *Element size* (this controls the element size at the well).

Next, we will mark the point as a well point. For a well, we define the pumping rate, and the elevation of the screened interval. The screened interval is used to determine which nodes in the 3D mesh to assign the pumping rate to. The pumping rate is factored among all nodes lying within the screened interval. In our case, there will only be one node.

- 1. Turn on the *Well* option.
- 2. Enter –185 for the *Top of screen*.
- 3. Enter –195 for the *Bottom of screen*.
- 4. Enter –100000 for the *Flux rate*.
- 5. Select *OK* to exit the dialog.

Repeat this entire process to create two more wells with the following attributes:

Well #	1	2
Х	3854	5026
Y	3034	1872
Z	75	45
Element size	150	150
Top of screen	-200	-240
Bottom of screen	-210	-250
Flux rate	-100000	-100000

15.5 Building the 3D Mesh

At this point, the conceptual model is complete and we are ready to build the 3D finite element mesh. The mesh will consist of two zones, one for the upper aquifer and one for the lower aquifer. The upper zone will consist of two layers of elements and the lower zone will consist of three layers of elements. To build the mesh, we will first create a 2D "projection" mesh using the feature objects in the conceptual model. We will then create three triangulated irregular networks (TINs): one for the top (terrain) surface, one for the bottom of the upper aquifer, and one for the bottom of the lower aquifer. We will then create the 3D elements by extruding each of the elements in the 2D mesh into a column of 3D elements.

15.5.1 Defining the Materials

Before building the mesh, we will define a material for each of the aquifers. The materials are assigned to the TINs and eventually to each of the 3D elements.

- 1. Select the *Materials* command from the *Edit* menu.
- 2. Change the name of the default material to "Upper Aquifer".
- 3. Click on the color window in the *Display* section and change the material color to green.
- 4. Select the *New* button to create another material.
- 5. Change the name of the new material to "Lower Aquifer".
- 6. Change the material color to red.
- 7. Select the *OK* button.

15.5.2 Building the 2D Projection Mesh

The 2D projection mesh can be constructed directly from the conceptual model:

- 1. Select the *Map* -> 2D Mesh command from the Feature Objects menu.
- 2. Select *OK* to accept the defaults in the *Map* -> 2D Mesh dialog.

After a few seconds, the mesh should appear.

15.5.3 Building the TINs

To build the TINs defining the stratigraphic horizons, we will make three TINs where each TIN is a copy of the 2D mesh. At first, these three TIN's will have the same elevations (zero) as the 2D mesh. We will then import a set of scatter points and interpolate the proper elevations to the TINs.

To create the top TIN:

- 1. Switch to the 2D Mesh module \blacksquare .
- 2. Select the *Mesh -> TIN* command from the *Build Mesh* menu.
- 3. Enter "terrain" for the name of the TIN.

- 4. From the list of materials, select *Upper Aquifer* (this defines the material <u>below</u> the TIN).
- 5. Select OK.
- 6. Select *No* at the prompt. We do not want to delete the 2D mesh.

To create the second TIN:

- 1. Select the *Mesh* -> *TIN* command from the *Build Mesh* menu.
- 2. Enter "bottom upper aquifer" for the name of the TIN.
- 3. From the list of materials, select *Lower Aquifer*.
- 4. Select OK.
- 5. Select *No* at the prompt.

To create the third TIN:

- 1. Select the *Mesh -> TIN* command from the *Build Mesh* menu.
- 2. Enter "bottom lower aquifer" for the name of the TIN.
- 3. From the list of materials, select *Lower Aquifer* (this value is ignored for the bottom TIN).
- 4. Select OK.
- 5. Select *No* at the prompt.

15.5.4 Importing and Interpolating the Terrain Data

Next, we will import the scatter points defining the terrain elevations and interpolate the elevations to the top TIN. The terrain points were created by digitizing elevations from the contour map. The points were saved in a tabular scatter point file.

- 1. Select the *Import* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Change the file filter to "*.sp2".
- 3. Select and open the file named *terrian.sp2*.

You should see a set of points appear. Before interpolating to the TIN, we need to make sure the top TIN is the active TIN.

- 1. Switch to the *TIN* module \bigotimes .
- 2. In the *TIN* combo box at the upper left corner of the screen, select the TIN named *terrain*.

Before interpolating, we will make some adjustments to the interpolation options (based on our experience with these scatter point data).

- 1. Switch to the 2D Scatter Point module
- 2. Select the Interp. Options command in the Interpolation menu.
- 3. Select the Options button next to the Inverse distance weighted item.
- 4. In the *Nodal function* section, select the *Constant* option.
- 5. Select the OK button and then the Close button to exit both dialogs.

To interpolate from the scatter points to the TIN.

- 1. Select the to Active TIN command in the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Turn on the *Map elevations* option.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

To view the interpolated elevations:

- 1. Select the *Oblique View* macro
- 2. Select the *Z* Magnification command in the View menu.
- 3. Enter a magnification factor of 4.0.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

15.5.5 Importing and Interpolating the Layer Elevation Data

Next, we will import and interpolate the elevations defining the bottom of the upper and lower aquifers. These elevations were obtained from a set of exploratory boreholes and were saved to a tabular scatter point file.

- 1. Select the *Import* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Change the file filter to *.sp2.
- 3. Select and open the file named *elevs.sp2*.

Once again, before interpolating to the TIN, we need to make sure the desired TIN is the active TIN.

- 1. Switch to the TIN module \bigotimes
- 2. In the *TIN* combo box at the upper left corner of the screen, select the TIN named *bottom upper aquifer*.

Before interpolating, we will switch back to the default interpolation method.

- 1. Switch to the 2D Scatter Point module **.
- 2. Select the *Interp. Options* command in the *Interpolation* menu.
- 3. Select the Options button next to the Inverse distance weighted item.
- 4. In the *Nodal function* section, select the *Gradient plane* option.
- 5. Select the *OK* button and then the *Close* button to exit both dialogs.

This scatter point set has two data sets: one set of elevations for the bottom of the upper aquifer and one set for the bottom of the lower aquifer. We will first interpolate the elevations for the bottom of the upper aquifer.

Select the *bot of layer 1* data set in the *Data Set* combo box at the top of the screen.

To interpolate from the scatter points to the TIN.

- 1. Select the to Active TIN command in the Interpolation menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

Finally, we will interpolate the elevations for the bottom TIN.

- 1. Switch to the *TIN* module \bigotimes .
- 2. In the *TIN* combo box at the upper left corner of the screen, select the TIN named *bottom lower aquifer*.
- 3. Switch to the 2D Scatter Point module
- 4. Select the *bot of layer 2* data set in the *Data Set* combo box at the top of the screen.
- 5. Select the *to Active TIN* command in the *Interpolation* menu.

6. Select the OK button.

At this point, you should see the correct elevations on all three TINs. To simplify the display:

- 1. Switch to the *TIN* module \bigotimes .
- 2. Select the Display Options command in the Display menu.
- 3. Turn off the Vertices option.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

To see a shaded image of the TINs:

- 1. Select the *Frame Image* macro
- 2. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}$

15.5.6 Building the 3D Mesh

We are now ready to build the 3D mesh. The 3D mesh is constructed by selecting a pair of TINS and then filling between the TIN with extruded elements.

- 1. Select the *Select TINs* tool $\textcircled{\begin{tabular}{ll} \label{eq:select} \hline \end{tabular}}$
- 2. Select the top and middle TINs by clicking on the icons for the TINs while holding down the *Shift* key.
- 3. Select the *Fill Between TINs -> 3D Mesh* command in the *Build TIN* menu.
- 4. Enter 2 for the Number of interpolated mesh layers.
- 5. Select the Specify material option.
- 6. Select the material called "Upper Aquifer".
- 7. Select the *OK* button.

Next, we will build the elements for the lower aquifer.

- 1. Select the bottom two TINs
- 2. Select the *Fill Between TINs -> 3D Mesh* command in the *Build TIN* menu.

- 3. Enter 3 for the Number of interpolated mesh layers.
- 4. Select the Specify material option.
- 5. Select the material called "Lower Aquifer".
- 6. Select the *OK* button.

15.6 Hiding Objects

Before continuing, we will unclutter the display by hiding the objects we are finished with. We will hide everything but the feature objects and the 3D mesh.

To hide the TINs:

- 1. Drag a box around all three TIN icons.
- 2. Select the *Hide* macro

We can also hide the scatter points:

- 1. Switch to the 2D Scatter Point module
- 2. Select the *Select Scatter Point Sets* tool 🔀
- 3. Drag a box around both scatter point set icons.
- 4. Select the *Hide* tool

To hide the 2D mesh:

- 1. Switch to the 2D Mesh module \blacksquare .
- 2. Select the Display Options command in the Display menu.
- 3. Turn off the *Nodes* and *Elements* options.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

To unclutter the display of the 3D mesh:

- 1. Switch to the *3D Mesh* module $\frac{1}{100}$.
- 2. Select the Display Options command.

- 3. Turn off the *Nodes* option.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

Finally, to view a shaded image of the mesh:

Select the *Shade* macro

15.7 Converting the Conceptual Model

Now we are ready to convert the conceptual model to the 3D mesh model. This will assign all of the boundary conditions using the data defined on the feature objects.

- 1. Select the *New Simulation* command in the *FEMWATER* menu (this initializes the data structures for the FEMWATER simulation).
- 2. Switch to the *Map* module \clubsuit .
- 3. Select the *Map* -> *FEMWATER* command in the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 4. Select *OK* at the prompt (since we only have one coverage, the choice here does not matter).

A set of symbols should appear indicating that the boundary conditions have been assigned.

15.8 Selecting the Analysis Options

Next, we will switch to the 3D Mesh module and select the analysis options.

15.8.1 Entering the Run Options

First, we will indicate that we wish to run a steady state flow simulation:

- 1. Switch to the *3D Mesh* module $\prod_{i=1}^{n}$.
- 2. Select the *Run Options* command in the *FEMWATER* menu.
- 3. For the *Type of simulation*, select *Flow only*.
- 4. In the Steady State vs. Transient section, select Steady state solution.

The problem we are solving has a very large partially saturated region, mainly in the upper left corner of the model. The larger the unsaturated zone, the more difficult it is to get FEMWATER to converge. For these types of problems, the *Nodal/Nodal* option is a qood choice for quadrature. It is not as accurate as the default option (*Gaussian/Gaussian*), but it is more stable.

- 1. In the *Quadrature selection* section, select the *Nodal/Nodal* option.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

15.8.2 Setting the Iteration Parameters

Next, we will adjust the iteration parameters.

- 1. Select the *Iteration Parameters* command from the *FEMWATER* menu.
- 2. Set the *Max iterations for non-linear equation* to 100.
- 3. Set the *Max iterations for linear equation* to 1000.
- 4. Set the *Steady state convergence criterion* to 0.01.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

15.8.3 Selecting Output Control

Next, we will select the output options. We will choose to output a pressure head file only.

- 1. Select the *Output Control* command from the *FEMWATER* menu.
- 2. Turn off the *Save nodal moisture content file* and *Save velocity file* options.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

15.8.4 Defining the Fluid Properties

Finally, we will define the fluid properties.

Select the *Fluid Properties* command from the *FEMWATER* menu.

The items in this dialog are dependent on the units we have selected. Since this is a steady state solution, we can ignore the viscosity and compressibility options.

- 1. Enter 1.94 for the Density of water.
- 2. Enter 2.4037e11 for the Acceleration of gravity.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

15.9 Defining Initial Conditions

Because of the non-linear equations used by FEMWATER to model flow in the unsaturated zone, FEMWATER is more sensitive to initial conditions than saturated flow models such as MODFLOW. If a set of initial conditions is defined that is significantly different than the final head distribution, FEMWATER may be slow or even unable to converge.

For a flow simulation, FEMWATER requires a set of pressure heads as an initial condition. The FEMWATER interface in GMS includes a command that can be used to automatically create a set of pressure heads from a userdefined water table surface. The water table surface is defined by a set of scatter points. A total head data set is generated by interpolating head values from the scatter points to the nodes of the 3D mesh. Finally, the pressure head data set is created by subtracting the node elevations from the total head values.

15.9.1 Creating the Scatter Point Set

To define the initial condition, we will create a small set of points at the expected elevation of the computed water table surface. One way to do this would be to create a tabular scatter point file containing the elevations. Another faster method is create the points interactively. We will use this method.

Before digitizing the points, we will turn off the flux boundary condition display options

- 1. Select the BC Display Options command in the FEMWATER menu.
- 2. Turn off the *Flux* option.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

To digitize the points on screen, we will create a new TIN and create a set of TIN vertices. As we create each point, GMS will prompt for the vertex elevation. Once the points are created, we will convert the vertices to a 2D scatter point set.

1. Switch to *Plan View*

- 2. Switch to the *TIN* module \bigotimes .
- 3. Select the *New TIN* command in the *Build TIN* menu.
- 4. Enter "starting head" for the Name.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.

Next, we will create the points (vertices). We will create one point at each of the locations shown in Figure 15.2.

- 1. Select the *Create Vertex* tool
- 2. Click once on the screen to create the point at the lower left hand corner of the model near the upper (left) end of the stream forming the bottom boundary of the model.
- 3. Enter a value of 200 for the elevation and click OK.
- 4. Repeat this process to create a point at each of the locations shown in Figure 15.2. Be sure to enter the proper elevation.

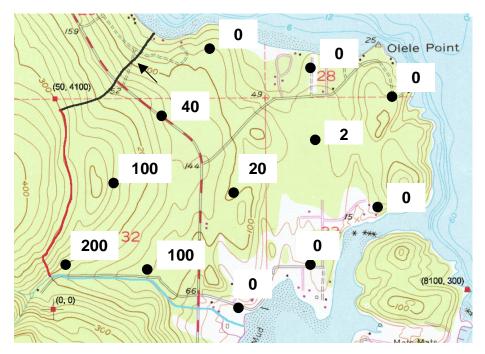


Figure 15.2 Locations and Elevations for New Points.

Once the TIN vertices are created, we are ready to convert the vertices to a scatter point set.

1. Select the TIN -> Scatter Points command in the Build TIN menu.

- 2. Enter "Starting Heads" for the scatter point set name and hit OK.
- 3. Select *Yes* to delete the TIN.

15.9.2 Creating the Data Set

Finally, to define the initial condition, we must create a pressure head data set. The data set will be saved to a data set file. The path to this file will be passed to FEMWATER when the simulation is launched.

- 1. Switch to the *3D Mesh* module $\prod_{i=1}^{n}$.
- 2. Select the Initial Conditions command in the FEMWATER menu.
- 3. In the *Pressure Head* section in the upper left corner of the dialog, select the *Read from data set file* option.
- 4. Select the *Generate IC* button.
- 5. Select Starting_Heads for the Active 2D scatter point set.
- 6. Enter –200 for the *Mininum pressure head*.
- 7. Select the *OK* button.
- 8. When prompted for the file name, enter *starthd.phd* and select the *Save* button.
- 9. Select the OK button to exit the Initial Condition dialog.

15.10 Defining the Material Properties

The final step in setting up the model is to define the material properties.

Select the *Material Properties* dialog from the *FEMWATER* menu.

We need to enter a hydraulic conductivity and a set of unsaturated zone curves for each aquifer. The items on the left side of the dialog are for transport simulations and can be ignored in our case.

To define the material properties for the upper aquifer:

1. Select the *Upper aquifer* item in the list at the top of the dialog.

- 2. Enter a value of 10.0 in the upper left edit field in the *Conductivity* section and select the *Isotropic* button. This should fill in all of the diagonal terms with a value of 10.0.
- 3. Select the *Generate Curves* button.
- 4. Enter 6.0 for the Max. height above water table.
- 5. In the Preset parameter values section, select Silt.
- 6. Select the *Compute Curves* button.
- 7. Select the *OK* button.

To define the material properties for the lower aquifer:

- 1. Select the *Lower aquifer* item in the list at the top of the dialog.
- 2. Enter a value of 30.0 in the upper left edit field in the *Conductivity* section and select the *Isotropic* button
- 3. Select the *Generate Curves* button.
- 4. Select the Compute Curves button.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.
- 6. Select the OK button to exit the Material Properties dialog.

15.11 Saving and Running the Model

We are now ready to save and run the model.

- 1. Select the Save As command in the File menu.
- 2. Enter *femmod.gpr* for the project name.
- 3. Select the *Save* button.

NOTE: By saving the project, we have save all of the data associated with the tutorial exercise, including the 2D mesh, feature objects, etc. This also saves the FEMWATER simulation to a set of files named femmod.*. It is also possible to save the FEMWATER simulation without saving the rest of the files using the Save/Save As commands in the *FEMWATER* menu. This approach is used to save multiple version of the FEMWATER simulation without having to save unneeded copies of the rest of the project files.

To run FEMWATER:

- 1. Select the *Run* FEMWATER command from the *FEMWATER* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt.

The FEMWATER window should appear and you will see some information on the progress of the model convergence. The model should converge in a few minutes. When the model converges, close the window and return to GMS.

15.12 Viewing the Solution

Next, we will read in the computed solution and view it.

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command from the *FEMWATER* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt.

15.12.1 Viewing Fringes

First, we will view a color fringe plot.

- 1. Select the *Display Options* command in the *Display* menu.
- 2. Turn on the *Fringes* option.
- 3. Select the FEMWATER tab.
- 4. Turn off the *Head* and *Flux* options.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.
- 6. Switch to oblique view 4
- 7. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}$

15.12.2 Viewing a Water Table Iso-Surface

A better way to view the solution is to generate an iso-surface at a pressure head of zero. This creates a surface matching the computed water table. Further, if we cap the iso-surface on the side greater than zero, we will get a color-shaded image of the pressure variation in the saturated zone.

1. Select the Display Options command in the Display menu.

- 2. Turn off the *Elements* option.
- 3. Turn on the Iso-surfaces option.
- 4. Select the Options button next to the Iso-surfaces item.
- 5. For the first iso-value, enter a value of 0.0.
- 6. Turn on the *Cap* toggle just below the first iso-value.
- 7. Select the OK button to exit both dialogs.
- 8. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}$

15.12.3 Draping the TIFF Image on the Ground Surface

Finally, we will drape the TIFF image on the terrain surface to illustrate the spatial relationship between the computed water table surface and the ground surface. To do this, we will first unhide the top TIN.

- 1. Switch to the *TIN* module \bigotimes
- 2. Select the *Select TINs* tool
- 3. Select the top TIN.
- 4. Select the *Show* macro
- 5. In the *TIN* combo box at the upper left of the GMS screen, select the *terrain* TIN (this makes the TIN active).

Next we will set the option to map the TIFF image to the TIN when shaded.

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module.
- 2. Select the Display Options command in the Images menu.
- 3. Turn on the Texture map to surface when shaded option.
- 4. In the combo box, select the Map to active TIN option.
- 5. Select the *OK* button.
- 6. Select the *Shade* macro $\mathbf{\hat{\mathbf{G}}}$.

After a short wait (this may take up to several minutes depending on the machine speed and the quality of the graphics card), the shaded image should appear. To view the image from the other side:

- 1. Select the *Rotate* tool
- 2. Click on the screen and drag horizontally to the left side of the screen. Repeat as necessary until the other side of the model is visible.
- 3. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}\Theta$

Finally, we will try the smooth shade option.

- 1. Select the Shading Options command from the Display menu.
- 2. Select the *Smooth features* option.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. Select the *Shade* macro $^{\circ}\Theta$.

15.13 Conclusion

This concludes the FEMWATER – *Flow Model* tutorial. If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 3. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 4. Select No at the prompt.

CHAPTER

SEEP2D - Confined

SEEP2D is a 2D finite element, steady state, flow model. It is typically used for profile models, i.e., cross-section models representing a vertical slice through a flow system which is symmetric in the third dimension. Examples include earth dams, levees, sheet piles, etc.

SEEP2D can be used for both confined and unconfined problems. Accordingly, the SEEP2D tutorials are divided into two parts. The tutorial in this chapter describes how to set up and solve a confined seepage problem for SEEP2D using GMS. The steps required for simulating the unconfined condition are described in the following chapter. The two SEEP2D tutorials are entirely independent and can be completed in any order. However, it is recommended that the first tutorial be completed before the second tutorial since the motivation behind many of the steps in the model definition process is described in more detail in the first tutorial.

16.1 Description of Problem

The problem we will be solving in this tutorial is shown in Figure 16.1.

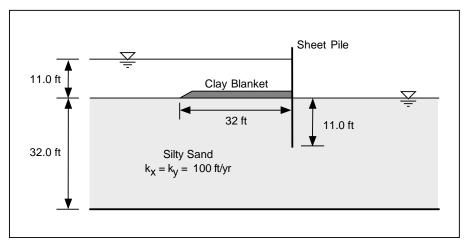


Figure 16.1 Confined Flow Problem.

The problem involves a partially penetrating sheet pile wall with an impervious clay blanket on the upstream side. The sheet pile is driven into a silty sand deposit underlain by bedrock at a depth of 32 feet.

From a SEEP2D viewpoint, this problem is a "confined" problem. For SEEP2D, a problem is confined if it is completely saturated. A problem is unconfined if it is partially saturated.

16.2 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

16.3 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The 2D Mesh module
- The SEEP2D interface

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If you have licensed and enabled each of the listed items on your version of GMS, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to obtain an updated password or hardware lock before continuing. The tutorial cannot be completed in demo mode because the ability to save files is required.

16.4 Creating the Mesh

The first step in setting up the problem is to create the finite element mesh. Two types of elements can be used with SEEP2D: three node triangular elements and four node quadrilateral elements. Generating the mesh involves subdividing the problem domain into small triangular and rectangular regions. A variety of methods are available in GMS for constructing a 2D mesh. For problems with simple geometry, the approach described in this tutorial can be used. For problems with more complex geometry, the *Map* module approach described in the following tutorial is typically the most efficient method.

16.4.1 Defining a Coordinate System

Before we construct the mesh, we must first establish a coordinate system. We will use a coordinate system with the origin 90 feet upstream of the sheet pile at the top of the bedrock as shown in Figure 16.2.

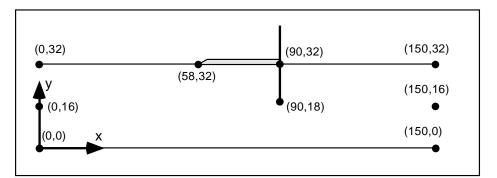


Figure 16.2 Coordinate System.

We will begin the mesh construction by creating some nodes at key locations in the mesh. Before we create any nodes, we must first set the window bounds so that we are viewing the proper region of the real world coordinate system in our graphics window. To set the window bounds:

- 1. Select the Set Wind Bounds command from the View menu.
- 2. Select the X range to be specified option.
- 3. Set *X* at left to -10.
- 4. Set *X* at right to 160.
- 5. Set Y at bottom to -10.
- 6. Click on the *OK* button.

We also need to set up a drawing grid to help us place the nodes in the proper location. To set up the drawing grid:

- 1. Select the *Drawing Grid Options* command from the *Display* menu.
- 2. Set the *Grid spacing* to 2.
- 3. Turn on the Snap to grid option.
- 4. Click on the *OK* button.

As you move the cursor across the graphics windows you should see the cursor position updated in intervals of two feet in the lower left window.

16.4.2 Creating the Corner Nodes

We are now ready to create some nodes at key corner locations. To create the nodes:

- 1. Switch to the 2D Mesh module \blacksquare .
- 2. Select the *Create Node* tool *** from the *Tool Palette*.

When this tool is active, a new node will be created at the cursor position each time you click in the *Graphics Window*.

3. Using the coordinate information in the bottom part of the window to help you position the cursor, create a node at each of the following coordinates (the coordinates shown in Figure 16.2):

x	у
0	0
0	16
0	32
58	32
90	32
90	18
150	32
150	16
150	0

If you create a node at the wrong location, you can edit the node coordinates using the *Select Nodes* tool ******. When this tool is active you can select nodes and change the coordinates using the edit fields in the top window. Highlight the values in the edit fields with the cursor, type in a new value, and hit the *Enter* key. You can also select nodes and delete them using the *Delete* key on the keyboard or the *Delete* command in the *Edit* menu.

Once you have created the nodes, you can center the display as follows:

Select the *Frame Image* macro

We will now turn the drawing grid off since it is no longer needed.

- 1. Select the Drawing Grid Options command from the Display menu.
- 2. Turn off the *Snap to grid* option.
- 3. Click on the *OK* button.

The nodes you have created should resemble the nodes shown in Figure 16.3 (without the labels).

• C	• D	• E	• G
• B		• F	• H
• A			• G • H • I

Figure 16.3 Nodes Created with the Create Node Tool.

16.4.3 Interpolating Intermediate Nodes

The next step in the mesh creation process is to add some new nodes between the nodes we just created. This will be accomplished using the *Interpolate Nodes* command.

- 1. Choose the *Select Nodes* tool **•••** in the *Tool Palette*.
- 2. Select nodes D and E. This can be accomplished by selecting node D and holding down the *Shift* key while selecting node E, or by dragging a box around nodes D and E.
- 3. Select the Node Interp Options command in the Modify Mesh menu.
- 4. Make sure that the *Number of intervals in string* option is selected.
- 5. Enter 2 for the number of intervals. This will create one new node between the two selected nodes.
- 6. Click on the *OK* button.

A new node should appear between nodes D and E. Repeat this process to create new nodes in the following locations:

- 1. Create 4 intervals (3 nodes) between nodes C and D.
- 2. Create 4 intervals (3 nodes) between nodes E and G.
- 3. Create 6 intervals (5 nodes) between nodes B and F.
- 4. Create 4 intervals (3 nodes) between nodes F and H.
- 5. Create 10 intervals (9 nodes) between nodes A and I.

At this point your nodes should resemble the nodes shown in Figure 16.4.

•	•	•	•	•	•	P	•	•	•	•
										•
										•

Figure 16.4 Nodes After Interpolating Intermediate Nodes.

16.4.4 Creating an Extra Node

At this point, we are almost ready to create elements, but we first need to add one more node to ensure that the sheet pile is properly represented in the mesh. To do this we need to add one more node slightly to the right of the node labeled P in Figure 16.4. To create the node:

- 1. Choose the *Create Node* tool
- 2. Click anywhere just to the right of node P.
- 3. Enter (90.25, 32.0) in the x and y fields in the *Edit Window* and hit the *Enter* key.

16.4.5 Creating the Elements

We are now ready to create some elements. Although there are several ways to create elements, in this case the easiest thing to do is triangulate the nodes that we have created. In most cases, however, quadrilateral elements are more efficient than triangular elements. We can create a mesh composed primarily of quadrilateral elements by triangulating the nodes and then merging the triangles into quadrilaterals.

- 1. Select the *Create Linear Triangle Element* tool \triangle .
- 2. Select the *Triangulate* command from the *Build Mesh* menu.
- 3. Select the *Merge Triangles* command from the *Modify Mesh* menu.
- 4. Click the *OK* button to confirm the merging of the entire mesh.
- 5. Click the *OK* button to confirm the angle.

The mesh should now appear as shown in Figure 16.5.

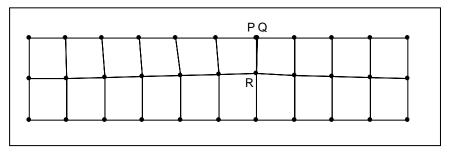


Figure 16.5 Mesh of Quadrilateral Elements.

16.4.6 Deleting the Sheet Pile Element

The next step is to make sure the sheet pile is properly represented in the mesh. The sheet pile is a no-flow boundary. Thus, we need to have a crack in the mesh in the location of the sheet pile. We can accomplish this by deleting the narrow element at the location of the sheet pile. To select the element, we must first zoom in on the sheet pile location.

- 1. Select the *Zoom* tool \bigcirc
- 2. Drag a box which just encloses the nodes P, Q, and R shown in Figure 16.5.

At this point you should have a close-up view of the area around nodes P, Q, and R as shown in Figure 16.6.

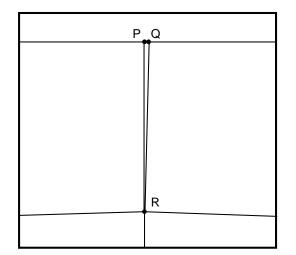


Figure 16.6 Region of Mesh where Sheet Pile is Located.

As shown in Figure 16.6, because we added the point Q just to the right of point P, there is a long, thin triangle joining nodes P, Q, and R. Since the sheet pile represents an impervious boundary, we must delete the element PQR. This will cause the flow to occur parallel to the edges PR and RQ.

- 1. Select the *Select Elements* tool
- 2. Click anywhere inside the element PQR.
- 3. Hit the Delete key or select the Delete command from the Edit menu.
- 4. Click on the *OK* button to confirm the deletion.
- 5. Select the *Frame Image* macro

16.4.7 Refining the Mesh

At this point, we have a complete mesh defining the region that we intend to model. We could get a solution with this mesh, but the solution would not be very accurate because we don't have very many elements. In general, the denser the mesh, the greater the accuracy in the solution. We can quickly increase the density of our mesh using the *Refine Elements* command.

- 1. Select the *Refine Elements* command from the *Modify Mesh* menu.
- 2. Click on the *OK* button to refine the entire mesh.
- 3. Repeat this process to refine the mesh one more time.

The construction of the nodes and elements is now complete.

16.5 Renumbering the Mesh

The next step in the model definition process is to renumber the nodes and elements. The sequence that the nodes are numbered has a dramatic impact on the amount of time required by SEEP2D to find a solution. The nodes and elements have been numbered in the order that they were created. This numbering is not optimal. The relative quality of the node numbering is indicated by the nodal half band width. The time required for a solution is quadratically proportional to the nodal half band width. To view the nodal half band width:

- 1. Select the Get Info command from the File menu.
- 2. Note the Max node half band width.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

The id's of each of the nodes in the mesh can be displayed as follows:

- 1. Select the Display Options command from the Display menu.
- 2. Select the *Node numbers* option.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

At this point, you may wish to use the *Zoom* tool to zoom in and examine the node numbering. When you are finished, select the *Frame Image* macro

To renumber the nodes and elements, we must first select a string of nodes on the boundary. This string of nodes defines a starting point for the renumbering process.

- 1. Choose the *Select Node String* tool
- 2. Select the leftmost column of nodes in sequence from top to bottom. This can be done one of two ways:

(a) Click on the top node, then the next node down and so on until all of the nodes in the column have been selected. Or,

(b) Click on the top node in the column, and while holding down the *Control* key, click on the bottom node in the column. All of the intermediate nodes will automatically be selected.

3. Select the *Renumber* command from the *Modify Mesh* menu.

Notice how the node numbering has changed. Bring up the *Get Info* dialog again to examine the new nodal half band width. Generally, the best node half band width occurs when a sequence of renumbering nodes is selected along the minor axis of the mesh. When in doubt, the mesh can be renumbered using several different strings of nodes to find the best numbering sequence.

To turn off the node numbers:

- 1. Select the Display Options command from the Display menu.
- 2. Turn the *Node numbers* option off.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

16.6 Initializing the SEEP2D Solution

Now that the mesh is constructed, we can begin to enter the SEEP2D data.

Select the New Simulation command in the SEEP2D menu.

16.7 Setting the Analysis Options

First, we will enter the analysis options. These are global options defining the type of problem we are solving.

- 1. Select the Analysis Options command from the SEEP2D menu.
- 2. Enter "Sample Confined Flow Problem" for the *Title*.
- 3. In the *Model Type* section, select the *Confined* option.
- 4. Select the *Units* button.
- 5. Select *ft* for the *Length* units.
- 6. Select *yr* for the *Time* units.
- 7. Select *slug* for the *Mass* units.
- 8. Select the *OK* button to exit both dialogs.

16.8 Assigning Material Properties

The next step in creating the model is to define material properties. There is one set of material properties for each zone of the mesh. The material properties are k_1 , k_2 , and an angle. The values k_1 and k_2 represent the two principal hydraulic conductivities and the angle is the angle from the x-axis to the direction of the major principle hydraulic conductivity measured counterclockwise as shown in Figure 16.7.

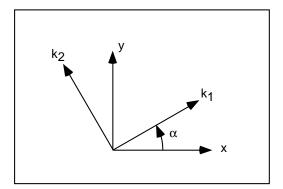


Figure 16.7 Definition of Hydraulic Conductivity Angle.

With most natural soil deposits, the major principal hydraulic conductivity is in the x direction, the minor principal hydraulic conductivity is in the y direction, and the angle is zero.

Each element in the mesh is assigned a material id. The material id is an index into a list of material properties. All of the elements we have created so far have a default material id of 1. This is sufficient since we only have one soil type in our problem. To enter the properties for material #1:

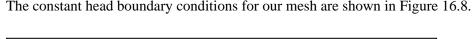
- 1. Select the *Material Properties* command from the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 2. Enter a value of 100 for both k_1 and k_2 .
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

Note: The units for hydraulic conductivity are L/T (length / time). The length units should always be consistent with the units used in defining the mesh geometry. Any time units can be used. However, small time units (such as seconds) will result in very small velocity values and may make it difficult to display velocity vectors. It is recommended that time units of days or years be used.

16.9 Assigning Boundary Conditions

The final step in defining the model is to assign boundary conditions to the mesh. For the problem we are modeling there are two types of boundary conditions: constant head and no-flow (flow is parallel to the boundary). With the finite element method, not assigning a boundary condition is equivalent to assigning a no-flow boundary condition. Therefore, all of the boundaries have a no-flow boundary condition by default and all that is necessary in this case is to assign the constant head boundary conditions.

16.9.1 Constant Head Boundaries



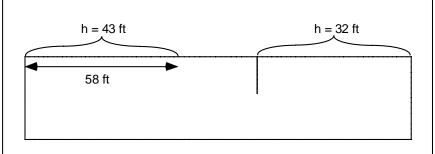


Figure 16.8 Constant Head Boundary Conditions.

The region on the left in Figure 16.8 represents the top of the mesh on the upstream side that is not covered with the clay blanket. The region on the right represents the downstream side of the mesh. Using a datum of zero, the total head in either case is simply the elevation of the water. As mentioned above, all other boundaries on the mesh have a no-flow boundary condition by default.

To enter the constant head boundary conditions for the region on the left:

- 1. Choose the *Select Nodes* tool
- 2. Using the cursor and noting the cursor coordinates in the lower left corner of the screen, locate the node with the coordinates (58, 32). This node represents the left end of the clay blanket. Drag a box which just encloses this node and all of the other nodes on the top boundary to the left of this node.
- 3. Select the *Node BC* command from the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 4. Select the *Head* option and enter a value of 43.

5. Select the OK button.

To enter the constant head boundary conditions for the region on the right:

- 1. Using the cursor and noting the cursor coordinates in the lower left corner of the screen, locate the region of the mesh representing the top of the sheet pile. Recall that this is the location where we defined two nodes very close to each other. The coordinates of the nodes are (90, 32) and (90.25, 32).
- 2. Select the *Zoom* tool \square .
- 3. Drag a box that just encloses the nodes at the top of the sheet pile and all of the nodes on the top boundary to the right of the sheet pile. Zooming in this manner will make it easier to select the proper nodes.
- 4. Choose the *Select Nodes* tool
- 5. Click on the node on the right at the top of the sheet pile (the node with coordinates (90.25, 32).
- 6. Holding down the *Shift* key (this ensures that the node you just selected remains selected), drag a box that encloses all of the nodes on the top boundary to the right of the node you just selected. Do not enclose the node you just selected.
- 7. Select the *Node BC* command from the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 8. Select the *Head* option and enter a value of 32.
- 9. Select the OK button.
- 10. Select the *Frame Image* macro

16.10 Saving the Simulation

We are now ready to save the simulation.

- 1. Select the Save As command from the SEEP2D menu.
- 2. Locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial*\s2con.
- 3. Enter *blanket.sps* for the file name.
- 4. Select the *Save* button.

16.11 Running SEEP2D

To run SEEP2D:

- 1. Select the *Run* SEEP2D command from the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 2. Select the OK button.

At this point SEEP2D is launched in a new window. When the solution is finished, close the window and return to GMS.

16.12 Viewing the Solution

To read the solution:

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command from the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

You should see the solution as a flow net. The flow net consists of equipotential lines (total head contours) and flow lines. You can turn on the display of the total flow through the cross section as follows:

- 1. Select the Display Options command from the Display menu.
- 2. Select the SEEP2D tab.
- 3. Turn on the *Title* and *Total flow rate* options.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

16.13 Conclusion

This concludes the SEEP2D tutorial. If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *No* at the prompt.

CHAPTER

SEEP2D - Unconfined

SEEP2D can be used for both confined and unconfined problems. The steps involved in performing a SEEP2D simulation for the unconfined condition are described in this tutorial.

Two approaches are available for unconfined problems with SEEP2D. With the first approach, the solution is only computed in the saturated zone and the mesh is truncated to the phreatic surface. The computed solution then consists of a new mesh geometry file and a solution file with the heads. With the second approach, the mesh is not deformed and the flow in both the saturated and unsaturated zones is computed. Both approaches will be illustrated in this tutorial.

It is recommended, but not required, that you complete the first SEEP2D tutorial (the previous chapter) before doing this tutorial.

17.1 Description of Problem

The problem we will be solving in this tutorial is shown in Figure 17.1. The problem consists of an earth dam with anisotropic soil and a low permeability core in the interior.

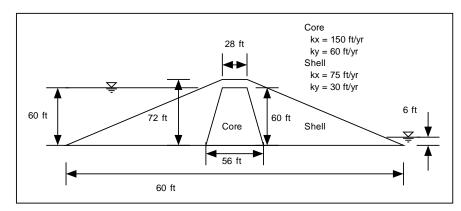


Figure 17.1 Unconfined Flow Problem.

17.2 Getting Started

If you have not yet done so, launch GMS. If you have already been using GMS, you may wish to select the *New* command from the *File* menu to ensure the program settings are restored to the default state.

17.3 Required Modules/Interfaces

This tutorial utilizes the following components of the GMS interface:

- The 2D Mesh module
- The *Map* module
- The SEEP2D interface

You can confirm whether each of these components has been enabled on your copy of GMS by selecting the *Register* command from the *File* menu. If you have licensed and enabled each of the listed items on your version of GMS, you can proceed to complete the tutorial in normal mode. If not, you will need to obtain an updated password or hardware lock before continuing. The tutorial cannot be completed in demo mode because the ability to save files is required.

17.4 Creating the Mesh

The first step in defining the model is to create the finite element mesh. The mesh will be constructed using the $Map \rightarrow 2D$ Mesh command in the Map

module. With this approach, we simply need to define the boundaries of the problem domain and GMS automatically constructs all of the interior nodes and elements.

17.4.1 Defining a Coordinate System

Before we construct the mesh we must first establish a coordinate system. We will use a coordinate system with the origin at the lower left corner of the dam as shown in Figure 17.2.

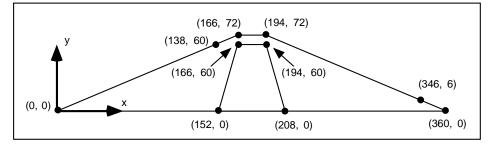


Figure 17.2 Coordinate System.

We will begin the mesh construction by creating some points at key locations in the mesh. Before we create any points we must first set the window bounds so that we are viewing the proper region of the real world coordinate system in the graphics window. To set the window bounds:

- 1. Select the Set Wind Bounds command from the View menu.
- 2. Select the *X* range to be specified option.
- 3. Set *X* at left to -10.
- 4. Set *X* at right to 370.
- 5. Set *Y* at bottom to -50.
- 6. Click on the *OK* button.

We also need to set up a drawing grid to help us place the points in the proper location. To set up the drawing grid:

- 1. Select the Drawing Grid Options command from the Display menu.
- 2. Set the *Grid spacing* to 2.
- 3. Turn on the *Snap to grid* option.
- 4. Click on the *OK* button.

As you move the cursor across the graphics windows you should see the cursor position updated in intervals of two feet in the lower left window.

17.4.2 Creating a Coverage

Before we construct the feature objects defining the boundary of the mesh, we must first initialize a 2D mesh coverage.

- 1. Switch to the *Map* module *****
- 2. Select the Coverages command in the Feature Objects menu.
- 3. Change the *Coverage Type* to SEEP2D.
- 4. Change the name of the coverage to "SEEP2D Mesh".
- 5. Select the OK button.

17.4.3 Creating the Corner Points

We are now ready to create some points at key corner locations. These points will then be used to guide the construction of a set of arcs defining the mesh boundary.

- 1. Select the *Create Point* tool *** from the *Tool Palette*.
- 2. Using the coordinate information in the lower left hand window to help you position the cursor, create a node at each of the following coordinates (the coordinates shown in Figure 17.2):

x	у
0	0
138	60
166	72
194	72
166	60
194	60
152	0
208	0
346	6
360	0

If you create a point at the wrong location, you can edit the node coordinates using the *Select Points/Nodes* tool **(**). When this tool is active you can select points and change the coordinates using the edit fields in the bottom window. Highlight the values in the edit fields with the cursor, type in a new value, and

hit the *Enter* key. You can also select points and delete them using the *Delete* key on the keyboard or the *Delete* command in the *Edit* menu.

Once you have created the points, you can center the display as follows:

Select the *Frame Image* macro

We will now turn the drawing grid off since it is no longer needed.

- 1. Select the Drawing Grid Options command from the Display menu.
- 2. Turn off the Snap to grid option.
- 3. Click on the *OK* button.

The nodes you have created should resemble the nodes shown in Figure 17.3 (without the labels).

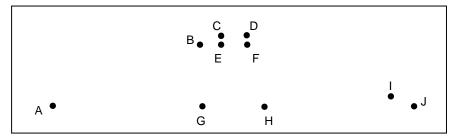


Figure 17.3 Points Created with the Create Point Tool

17.4.4 Creating the Arcs

Now that the corner nodes are created, the next step is to create the arcs defining the boundaries of both the shell and the core of the dam. This can be accomplished as follows:

- 1. Select the *Create Arc* tool
- 2. Create a series of arcs around the perimeter of the dam by clicking on the following points in order (double click on the last point to end the sequence): A-B-C-D-I-J-H-G-A.
- 3. Create the remaining arcs around the core boundary by clicking on the following points in order (double click on the last point to end the sequence): G-E-F-H.

17.4.5 Redistributing Vertices

Arcs are composed of both nodes and vertices. The nodes are the two end points of the arc. The vertices are intermediate points between the nodes. The gaps between vertices are called edges. At this point, all of our arcs have one edge and zero vertices. When we issue the *Map* -> 2D Mesh command, the density of the elements in the interior of the mesh is controlled by the edge spacing along the arcs. Thus, we will subdivide the arcs to create appropriately sized edges.

- 1. Choose the *Select Arcs* tool .
- 2. Select all of the arcs by dragging a box that encloses all of the arcs.
- 3. Select the *Redistribute Vertices* command from the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 4. Select the *Target spacing* option.
- 5. Enter a value of 4.0 for the spacing.
- 6. Select the *OK* button.

17.4.6 Creating the Polygons

Now we are ready to create the polygons defining the two material zones. Simply creating the arcs does not create the polygons. We must explicitly create the polygons using the arcs.

- 1. Select the Build Polygons command from the Feature Objects menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt.

17.4.7 Assigning the Material Types

Now that the polygons are created, we need to define a material type to be associated with each polygon.

- 1. Choose the *Select Polygons* tool
- 2. Double click anywhere inside the polygon representing the shell of the dam.
- 3. Notice that material #1 has been assigned to the shell by default. Change the name of the material to "Shell".
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

Now we will do the same for the other polygon.

- 1. Double click anywhere inside the polygon representing the core of the dam.
- 2. Select the *New* button to create a new material.
- 3. Change the name of the material to "Core".
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

17.4.8 Constructing the Mesh

At this point, we are ready to construct the mesh.

- 1. Select the *Map* -> 2D *Mesh* command from the *Feature Objects* menu.
- 2. Select *OK* at the prompt.

As the mesh is being constructed, you should see some messages in the lower left corner of the window. The mesh construction should take several seconds.

17.5 Renumbering the Mesh

The next step in the mesh construction process is to renumber the nodes and elements. The motivation behind the renumbering process and some tools for viewing node and element numbering are described in the previous tutorial and in the GMS *Reference Manual*.

To renumber the nodes and elements, we must first select a string of nodes on the boundary. This string of nodes defines a starting point for the renumbering process. In the case of a simple earth dam, the numbering is typically optimal if the renumbering begins at the leftmost or rightmost node in the mesh. Therefore, in this case, the string of nodes for renumbering will consist of only one node.

- 1. Switch to the 2D Mesh module \blacksquare .
- 2. Choose the *Select Node Strings* tool
- 3. Select the leftmost node in the mesh (point A in Figure 17.3).
- 4. Select the *Renumber* command from the *Modify Mesh* menu.

17.6 Initializing the SEEP2D Solution

Now that the mesh is constructed, we can begin to enter the SEEP2D data.

Select the New Simulation command in the SEEP2D menu.

17.7 Setting the Analysis Options

Next, we will enter the analysis options. We will select the option to deform the mesh to the phreatic surface. This will model flow in the saturated zone only

- 1. Select the Analysis Options command from the SEEP2D menu.
- 2. Enter "Sample Unconfined Flow Problem" for the *Title*.
- 3. In the *Model Type* section, select the *Unconfined* option.
- 4. Select the Saturated with deforming mesh option.
- 5. Select the *Units* button.
- 6. Select *ft* for the *Length* units.
- 7. Select *yr* for the *Time* units.
- 8. Select *slug* for the *Mass* units.
- 9. Select the OK button to exit both dialogs.

17.8 Assigning Material Properties

The next step is to define material properties. Each element in the mesh is assigned a material id. The material ids were automatically assigned to the elements using the polygons when the mesh was constructed. At this point, all that is left is to enter the hydraulic conductivity.

- 1. Select the *Material Properties* command from the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 2. Highlight the material entitled "Shell".
- 3. Enter a value of 150 for k_1 and 60 k_2 .
- 4. Highlight the material entitled "Core".
- 5. Enter a value of 15 for k_1 and $6 k_2$.

6. Select the *OK* button.

17.9 Assigning Boundary Conditions

The final step in defining the model is to assign boundary conditions to the mesh. For the problem we are modeling there are three types of boundary conditions: (1) no-flow (flow is parallel to the boundary), (2) specified head, and (3) exit face. With the finite element method, not assigning a boundary condition is equivalent to assigning a no-flow boundary condition. Therefore, all of the boundaries have a no-flow boundary condition by default and all that is necessary is to assign the specified head and exit face boundary conditions.

17.9.1 Specified Head Boundary Conditions

The specified head boundary conditions for our mesh are shown in Figure 17.4.

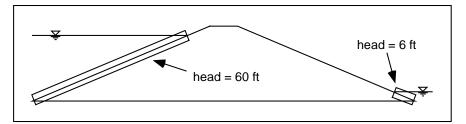


Figure 17.4 The Specified Head Boundary Conditions.

To enter the specified head boundary conditions for the region on the left:

- 1. Choose the *Select Node Strings* tool
- 2. Select the node on the left face of the dam at y = 60 ft (where the water surface touches the dam on the upstream side). If you select the wrong node by mistake, press the *ESC* key.
- 3. While holding down the *Control* key, select the leftmost node on the mesh (at y = 0).
- 4. Select the *Node BC* command from the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 5. Select the *Head* option and enter a value of 60.
- 6. Click on the *OK* button.

To enter the specified head boundary conditions for the region on the right:

1. Select the rightmost node on the dam (at y = 0).

- 2. While holding down the *Control* key, select the node at y = 6 ft (where the water surface touches the dam on the downstream side).
- 3. Select the *Node BC* command from the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 4. Select the *Head* option and enter a value of 6.
- 5. Click on the *OK* button.

17.9.2 Exit Face Boundary Conditions

The remaining type of boundary condition to enter is the exit face definition. Since we are using the deforming mesh option, SEEP2D will iterate to find the location of the phreatic surface. During this iteration, the geometry of the mesh will be altered so that the top of the mesh coincides with the phreatic surface. To guide the iteration process, we need to mark all of the nodes on the mesh where the phreatic surface may exit as exit face nodes. The region of the mesh where the phreatic surface may exit is illustrated in Figure 17.5.

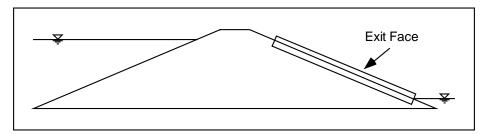


Figure 17.5 The Exit Face Boundary Condition.

To define the exit face boundary conditions:

- 1. Select the node just above the tail water level (the node just above the top specified head node) on the right side of the dam.
- 2. Holding down the *Control* key, select the node at approximately y = 60 ft on the right side of the dam.
- 3. Select the *Node BC* command from the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 4. Select the *Exit Face* option.
- 5. Click on the *OK* button.

17.10 Saving the Simulation

We are now ready to save the simulation.

- 1. Select the Save As command from the SEEP2D menu.
- 2. Locate and open the directory entitled *tutorial*\s2unc.
- 3. Enter *dam1.sps* for the file name.
- 4. Select the *Save* buttton.

17.11 Running SEEP2D

We are now ready to run SEEP2D.

- 1. Select the *Run SEEP2D* command from the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

At this point SEEP2D is launched in a new window. When the solution is finished, close the window and return to GMS.

17.12 Viewing the Solution

To read the solution:

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command in the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.
- 3. Select *OK* at the prompt to delete the mesh.

You should now see a plot of the flow net. To better view the flow net, we will turn off the display of nodes and elements.

- 1. Select the Display Options command from the Display menu.
- 2. Turn off the *Nodes* and *Elements* options.
- 3. Turn on the *Mesh boundary* option.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

Note that there are only a small number of flow lines. GMS determines the number of flow lines to display based on how closely spaced the equipotential lines are in one of the materials. By default, the interval is computed based on the Shell material. To base the number on the Core material:

1. Select the *Display Options* command from the *Display* menu.

- 2. Select the SEEP2D tab.
- 3. Select the Base Material button.
- 4. Select the *Core* material.
- 5. Select the *OK* button to exit the dialog.

17.13 Modeling Flow in the Unsaturated Zone

For the last stage of the tutorial, we will compute a solution using a different approach. Rather than deforming the mesh and computing the solution in the saturated zone only, we will compute the flow in both the saturated and the unsaturated zone.

17.13.1 Reading in the Original Model

Before making the required changes to the model, we need to read the undeformed model back into memory.

- 1. Select the *Read Simulation* command from the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 2. Select *No* at the prompt to confirm we don't want to save changes.
- 3. Select the file entitled "dam1.sps".
- 4. Select the *Open* button.
- 5. Select *OK* at the prompt.

17.13.2 Changing the Mesh Display

Next, we will turn on the display of the nodes and elements.

- 1. Select the Display Options command in the Display menu.
- 2. Turn on the *Nodes* and *Elements* options.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.

17.13.3 Changing the Analysis Options

Next, we will change the analysis options. Two methods are provided in SEEP2D for computing the relative conductivity in the unsaturated zone: the linear front method and the Van Genuchten method. With the linear front method, the relative conductivity varies linearly from the saturated value down

to a user specified minimum at a given negative pressure head. With the Van Genuchten method, the Van Genuchten parameters are used to define the variation of the relative conductivity in the unsaturated zone. Both methods are described in detail in the SEEP2D *Primer*. We will use the linear front option.

- 1. Select the Analysis Options command from the SEEP2D menu.
- 2. Enter "Sample Unconfined Problem, Part II" for the title.
- 3. In the *Unconfined* section, select the *Saturated/unsaturated with linear front* option.
- 4. Select the *OK* button.

17.13.4 Editing the Material Properties

Next, we need to define a minimum relative conductivity and a threshold pressure head for each material.

- 1. Select the *Material Properties* command from the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 2. Select the material entitled "Shell".
- 3. Enter a value of -1.0 for h_0 .
- 4. Enter a value of 0.001 for k_m .
- 5. Select the material entitled "Core".
- 6. Enter a value of -4.0 for h_0 .
- 7. Enter a value of 0.001 for k_{m} .
- 8. Select the *OK* button.

17.14 Saving the Simulation

We are now ready to save the simulation and compute a new solution.

- 1. Select the Save As command from the SEEP2D menu.
- 2. Enter *dam2.sps* for the file name.
- 3. Select the *Save* button.

17.15 Running SEEP2D

To run SEEP2D:

- 1. Select the *Run SEEP2D* command from the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 2. Select the OK button.

When the solution is finished, close the window and return to GMS.

17.16 Viewing the Solution

Now that the solution has been computed, we can read it back into GMS to display the results graphically. In this case, since the mesh was not deformed the solution consists of a single file: a data set file containing the heads, velocities, etc.

- 1. Select the *Read Solution* command in the *SEEP2D* menu.
- 2. Select the *OK* button.

You should see a display of the equipotential lines and flow lines. To make the lines more visible:

- 1. Select the Display Options command in the Display menu.
- 2. Turn off the *Nodes* and *Elements* options.

Another useful way to view a sat/unsat solution is to create a plot of the phreatic surface. This can be accomplished by contouring the pressure head and using a single contour corresponding to zero.

- 1. Select the SEEP2D tab.
- 2. Turn off the *Flow lines* option.
- 3. Select the *OK* button.
- 4. In the Data Set combo box at the top of the window, select the pressure_head item.
- 5. Select the Contour Options command in the Data menu.
- 6. In the Contour Interval section, select the Specified values option.
- 7. Select the Values button to the right of the Specified values option.

- 8. Enter a value of 0.0 for the first contour value.
- 9. Select the *OK* button.
- 10. Select the *OK* button.

The displayed line corresponds to the boundary between the saturated and unsaturated zones.

17.17 Conclusion

This concludes the SEEP2D tutorial. If you wish to exit GMS at this time:

- 1. Select the *Exit* command from the *File* menu.
- 2. Select *No* at the prompt.